Great natural rhetorical gifts, conscientiously and devotedly cultivated, commanded for him a success in style which has left permanent traces of its supremacy not only in all future writings in Latin, but even in those of our own language and country.

"Nor is Cicero unworthy of consideration as a man. You feel the force of the soul through the beauty of the style. You see the man in the writer, the nation in the man, and the universe at the feet of the nation."
ELEMENTARY

LATIN WRITING

BY

CLARA B. JORDAN

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN HUGHES HIGH SCHOOL, CINCINNATI

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK •• CINCINNATI •• CHICAGO
PREFACE

*Elementary Latin Writing* assumes that the pupil has studied Latin one year, and is ready to make use of the regular forms of the Latin language. The book is planned for the second, third, and fourth years' work in secondary schools.

In the arrangement of topics the aim has been to follow in some degree the order in which these are presented in Latin grammars. Rules of syntax from recent grammars precede the different exercises. The references to the articles on syntax and the suggestions following the Exercises are intended to aid the pupil in expressing thoughts, not words, and to guide him to correct sentence construction.

The English sentences have been collected from so many different sources that it is impossible to give individual acknowledgment. These have in many cases been selected not only to illustrate a Latin principle, but also to make more intelligible a fact or a reference frequently met by the pupil in his reading.

Personal experience has shown that in the translating of sentences of this kind, rather than of those taken directly from the authors read it is possible for the student to learn to imitate the *style* of Caesar or Cicero without *copying* the exact words of either of these authors.

The selection of simple sentences for the work of the second year and a part of the third year has been intentional. These sentences may, however, at the pleasure of
the teacher, be combined into periodic sentences. During the third year the separate sentences are dropped and the pupil begins connected Latin writing.

Special study of conditional sentences and of indirect discourse is intentionally omitted from the second year's work and reserved for the third year, when, after a year's study of Caesar, the pupil is better prepared for these subjects, which he always seems to dread.

In the selection of quotations, pages 212–231, the aim has been to bring together in logical order the different declensions, classes of pronouns, verbs, etc., so that these may be used for a constant review of forms.

A vocabulary has been added at the suggestion of many teachers of Latin, to save time for the beginner in his search for a word. Words and forms, however, are not the only essentials of Latin writing. The pupil should remember that two peoples seldom express the same thought in the same way. Therefore, to write in Latin, he must observe both how the Romans expressed their own thoughts and how they would probably have expressed our thoughts.

I regret that I cannot thank personally the many whose works I have used very freely, and to whom I am, therefore, under many obligations.

My thanks are due to Dr. E. W. Coy, Principal of Hughes High School, for advice and suggestions.

CLARA B. JORDAN.
# CONTENTS

[The references in the exercises and in the vocabulary are to the articles on syntax.]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Statements</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of Nouns</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nominative</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Genitive</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 1–3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dative</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 4–6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Accusative</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of the Word as</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ablative</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 9–14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of Adjectives</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 15–21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of Pronouns</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 22–26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Questions</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 27–30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative Mode</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative Commands</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Mode</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerunds and Gerundives</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supines</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 33, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Sentences</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises 35–37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive Clauses</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Sentences</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative Subjunctive</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Clauses</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal Clauses</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concessive Clauses</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proviso Clauses</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative Final and Consecutive Clauses</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rendering of <em>may, can, must, ought, might, would, let, etc.</em></td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction with Verbs of Fearing</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction with Verbs of Preventing, Hindering, Refusing, etc.</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction with Expressions of Doubt</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Lists</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Dates</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs 44-46</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Discourse</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Names</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Exercises</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. Marathon</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. Philip of Macedon</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. Alexander the Great</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55. Alexander the Great</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56. Hannibal</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57. Hannibal</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58. Hannibal</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59. Hannibal</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. Hannibal</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. "True ease in writing comes from art, not chance."

We are apt to think that the many happy expressions found in the writings of the great masters are the result of genius alone. Not so, however, for much labor is required in the selecting of words and expressions, and in the combining of them in such a way as to produce the most artistic and forcible effect.

2. In English, since it is not an inflected language, the arrangement of words is somewhat definitely fixed according to rules of syntax. In Latin, however, because of its inflected forms, a word, with the exception of a few particles, may take almost any position in a sentence.

3. The natural order of a Latin sentence in which no special emphasis is to be expressed is—Subject, Object, Verb, each with its modifiers.

4. In a sentence of the following type, the emphasis may be produced in Latin by the order of the words; in English, by italicizing them:

- **Puer sorōrem vocat**, the boy is calling his sister.
- **Sorōrem puer vocat**, the boy is calling his sister.
- **Vocat puer sorōrem**, the boy is calling his sister.
- **Sorōrem vocat puer**, the boy is calling his sister.
5. The Romans considered the beginning and the end the important positions in a sentence.

6. Interrogatives naturally occupy the first place in a sentence, but they are sometimes placed after one or more emphatic words.

7. Among the words which do not stand first in a sentence are autem, enim, quidem, quoque, tamen, vērō, quis the Indefinite Pronoun after sī, nisi, nē, num.

8. Precision requires that a sentence should begin with the word most intimately connected with the thought of the preceding sentence.

9. Let your sentence end with a word that is essential both to the construction and the thought to be expressed.

By changing the place of ad eum mittere, and arranging Caesar’s sentence (Bk. i, 47) as follows: Commodissimum visum est ad eum mittere Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerii Cabūri filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem,—cuius pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat,—et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, we find that, without violating the construction, we may stop with Procillum, or filium, or adulēscentem, or erat, or scientiam, or ūtēbātur, or esset.

With Caesar’s arrangement one is obliged to go to the word mittere, which with ad eum follows nōn esset, before he can get the thought.

10. Bring together words that are logically connected:

Nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendere.

Is, sē praesente, dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat.
Deōrum immortālium summō ergā vōs amōre.
In hāc īnsolītā mihi ex hōc locō ratiōne dīcendi. Change the order of these words of Cicerō, and we lose the thought, that Cicerō is appearing before the people for the first time as praetor.

11. When several pronouns are used in the same sentence, they should be brought near to one another, as should words of like derivation. This the Romans did to show contrast.

Videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam qui tēcum ūnā fuērunt.

Alius aliā causā inlātā.

Sed ut tum ad senem senex dē senectūte, sīc hōc librō ad amīcum amīcissimus scripsī dē amīcitā.

Huic ego mē bellō ducem profiteor.

12. Give a prominent person or thing a prominent position in a Latin sentence:

Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit, it was he who formed a conspiracy during the consulship of Messala and Piso.

Cum lūxuriā nōbīs certandum est, it is with high-living (high livers) that we have to fight.

13. Remember that translation of Latin words into English words, or English words into Latin words, rarely produces correct sentence constructions. In transferring a sentence from one language to the other, the thought must be reproduced.

Rērum gestārum scripтор erat, sed autem in rē pūblicā dirigendā nōn versābātur, he was a historian, not a statesman.

Pauca locūtus discussit, after a few remarks, he left.
Cum periculō lēgātum mīsērunt, the sending of an ambassador was attended with much danger.

Sērō tē factī paenitet, you feel sorry for what you have done, but it is too late.

14. A cause, an inference, etc., often implied in English is to be expressed in Latin:

Vōs tunc pāruistis, cum pāruit nēmō qui nōluit. Reprehendō igitur? Minimē vērō. You obeyed orders at a time at which no one obeyed unless he wished to do so. Do I blame you? No, indeed.

15. Rhythm, quantity, and rhetorical figures are all to be considered in writing Latin.

USES OF NOUNS

16. We use nouns much more freely than the Romans did, and these are to be variously rendered in Latin.

When it is necessary to express an English noun by a Latin verb form, be careful to show the time of the noun by the tense of the verb:

1. The news came yesterday (it was announced yesterday), herī nūntiātum est.

2. No provision will be made (it will not have been provided), nōn prōvisum erit.

3. They used to have confidence in us (they trusted us), cōnfidēbant nōbis.

4. Environment has a great deal to do with character (it is of great importance with whom you have lived), magnī rēfert quibuscum vixerīs.
5. On his return, the general will raise more troops (the general, when he will have returned, will raise more troops), imperātor, cum reversus erit, plūrēs cōpiās cōget.

6. On his return the general raised more troops (the general, when he had returned, raised more troops), imperātor, cum reversus ēsset, plūrēs cōpiās coēgit.

17. One Latin noun may express an idea which in English would require two nouns with a preposition:

They have lost all sense of honor, pudor eōs dēseruit.

Again, we often find two Latin nouns with a conjunction, where in English there would be but one:

They formed an alliance, societātem et foedus fēcērunt.

18. Two Latin nouns connected by a copulative conjunction are used where we should expect one noun with an adjective or genitive:

Spectātor et testis, eye witness.
Vis ac dolor, violent grief.
Ratiō et doctrina, theoretical knowledge.
Ōrātiō et facultās, oratorical ability.
Omnia exempla cruciātūsque, all kinds of torture.
Summum periculum et discrimen, a very dangerous crisis.
Ūnō nūntiō atque ūnā significātiōne litterārum, by one stroke of the pen.

19. Names of persons may be used in the plural, frequently in a complimentary sense, to express character:

Non multi Cicerōnēs fuērunt, there have been few orators to be compared with Cicero.

Names of countries are used in the plural, as we use 'the Carolinas,' 'the Virginias':

Duās Hispāniās mūnivit, he fortified the two Spains.
20. Abstract nouns are used in the plural to show different kinds or instances of abstract ideas, or to show one idea pertaining to several persons or things:

Caesarem militis fortitūdinēs nōn fūgerunt, heroic acts on the part of a soldier did not escape Caesar's notice.

THE NOMINATIVE

21. The nominative is principally used:

1. As the subject of a finite verb:
   Tempus fugit, time flies.

2. As a predicate noun.
   Ariovistus rēx et amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat, Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the Senate.

3. As an appositive:
   Flūmen Rhēnus Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dīvidit, the river Rhine separates the Helvetians from the Germans.

22. The nominative is used in titles, notices, and inscriptions:

Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis, Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, the Carthaginian.

23. The nominative, either with or without an interjection, is sometimes used in exclamations:

ō festus diēs, O happy day!
ēn Priamus, behold Priam!

24. A nominative is used with an infinitive when the writer, "under influence of vivid description, ignores tense and person, and uses the so-called historical infinitive":
Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre. . . .
Diem ex diē dūcere Haedui, Caesar meanwhile dunning the Haedui for grain. . . . The Haedui putting him off from day to day.

THE GENITIVE

25. The genitive, the adjective case, is used chiefly with nouns, but it may be used with adjectives and verbs also:

- *Magister equitum*, master of horse.
- *Avidī laudis*, desirous of praise.
- *Sapientiae est id facere*, doing that shows wisdom.

26. The genitive may be used with a noun to show the subject of the action implied in the limited noun:

*Cicerōnis amor Tulliae filiae*, the love that Cicero feels for Tullia, his daughter.

In this sentence, *Cicerōnis* is a subjective genitive.

27. The genitive may be used with a noun to show the object of the action implied in the limited noun:

*Cicerōnis amor Tulliae filiae*, the love that Tullia feels for Cicero.

Here, *Cicerōnis* is an objective, *Tulliae*, a subjective genitive.

28. The possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester* are, as a rule, used where we should expect a subjective genitive of the corresponding personal pronoun:

*Meus amīcus vēnit*, I feel friendly to him who has come.

*Numquam enim hic neque suō neque amīcōrum iūdiciō revincētur*, never will he be convicted either by his own evidence or that of his friends.

29. A genitive is used before *causā*, *on account of*, and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*:
Ipsiús causá, on his own account.
Exemplí grátíá (e.g.), for the sake of example.
Cónsulis honóris causá, out of respect to the consul.

30. Remember to use with causá the possessives meá, tuá, suá, nostrá, and vestrá, not the genitives of the personal pronouns:
Mátris, nón tuá, causá, for your mother's sake, not your own.

31. Do not forget that a genitive of description requires an adjective in agreement with it, and that under this genitive are included genitives of time, space, and number:
Dux magnae auctóritátis est, he is a leader of great influence.
Trium měnsium molítia cibária efferunt, they take three months' provisions with them.
Quínque diérum iter, a five days' march.
Milíum passuum octó iter, a march of eight miles.
Milíum militum octó exercitus, an army of eight thousand soldiers.

32. With a word denoting a part, a genitive of the whole may be used. A genitive of this kind is
1. A noun in the plural, or a collective noun:
Quod návium habébant, what (of) ships they had.
Pars equitátús, a part of the cavalry.

2. A noun in the singular, in which case the word denoting the part is a nominative, or accusative singular neuter:
Id tempóris, at that (of) time.
Nihil dêtrímenti, no loss.
33. A predicate genitive may be used with sum:
*Populi est,* he is on the people’s side. (He is of the people.)
*Fortitūdinis est id facere,* it takes courage to do that.
*Est sapientiae,* or *sapientis,* it is a wise measure, it shows wisdom.
*Multārum rērum est,* it consists of many things.

34. Such verbs as *sum,* *aestimō,* *I value,* *putō,* *I think,*
*faciō,* *I make,* *emō,* *I buy,* *vēndō,* *I sell,* are used with the
genitives *magnī,* *parvī,* *flocci,* *huius,* *tanti,* and similar
words, to express indefinite value:
*Magnī tuam amīcitiam aestimant,* they value your friendship highly.
*Huius illud nōn facit,* he does not care a snap of his finger for that.
*Tanti tua apud eōs grātia est ut eant,* your influence with them is so great that they will go.
*Parvī rem putant,* they think that it does not amount to much.
*Quid dīcant flocci nōn facit,* he does not care a straw for what they say. (He does not make it of the value of a piece of wool.)

35. In such expressions as ‘accuse him of,’ ‘acquit him of,’ ‘charge him with,’ ‘condemn him for,’ a crime,—the crime may be expressed by the genitive:
*Prōdiōnis Catilīnam accusāvērunt,* they accused Catiline of treason.

36. Both genitive and accusative are used with verbs of remembering and forgetting:
*Caesarīs memīnit,* he remembers Caesar.
*Reminīscī pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,* to remember the former valor of the Helvetians.
20 ELEMENTARY LATIN WRITING

Haec ēlim meminisse iuvābit, to remember these things will at some time give us pleasure.
Numquam suī oblītus est, never did he forget self.
Iniūriās oblivisci solēs, you usually forget wrongs.

37. Use with miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, and taedet, the genitive of the person or thing that causes the feeling, with the accusative of the person affected:

Tuī mē miseret, I pity you.
Mē piget stultitiae meae, I am annoyed by my folly.
Mē pudet stultitiae meae, I am ashamed of my folly.
Mē factī paenitet, I am sorry for what I have done.
Tē vitae taedetne? are you tired of life?

Remember that an infinitive or a neuter pronoun may sometimes take the place of the genitive that causes the feeling:

Numquam paenitēbit tē īsse, never will you feel sorry for having gone.
Mē quid pudeat? why should I be ashamed?

38. With the impersonal verbs refer and interest, use the genitive of the person interested. The possessives meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, and vestrā, are used, however, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns:

Meā, nōn frātris, interest magnī, to me, but not to my brother, is it of great importance.

39. The locative form of singular names of towns of the first or second declension is like the genitive:

Cicerō Arpīnī nātus erat, Cicero was born at Arpīnum.

If you wish to locate Arpīnum, the Latin will become:

Cicerō Arpīnī parvō in oppidō Latī nātus erat, Cicero was born at Arpīnum, a little town in Latium (in may be omitted).
40. The genitive of the gerund and gerundive is used very commonly with *causā*, to express purpose.

When the gerundive is used with *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, gender and number are not to be considered:

*Suī cōnservandī causā*, for the sake of saving themselves, for self-preservation.

*Vestī adhortandī causā*, for the purpose of encouraging you.

**Exercise 1**

In the exercises which are to be written in Latin, the references are to the articles here given.

1. The Romans worshiped a great number of gods and goddesses.
2. The six great gods were Jupiter, Mars, Apollo, Neptune, Mercury, and Vulcan; the six great goddesses, Juno, Minerva, Venus, Diana, Ceres, and Vesta.
3. The father of gods and king of men was Jupiter.
4. The queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter was Juno.
5. Mars was the god of war; Apollo, of the sun; Neptune, of the sea; Vulcan, of fire. Mercury was Jupiter's messenger.
6. Minerva was the goddess of wisdom; Diana, of the moon; Venus, of love and beauty; Ceres, of grain and harvests; Vesta, of the hearth.
7. The Greeks represented their gods (as) statues of men and women.
8. These statues were very beautiful, and for this reason the Greeks were never ashamed of them. (37.)
9. The Athenians worshiped Minerva; they never forgot her, and she never forgot them. (36.)
10. Often did she accuse others of wrongdoing, but for them she always felt pity. (35; 37.)
11. No one remembers the heroes. (36.)
12. They were not gods, but a race stronger than men.

**Exercise 2**

1. There was a famous temple of Jupiter at Olympia. (39.)
2. There was a statue also of Jupiter at Olympia, a sacred place in Elis. (39.)
3. The inhabitants of eighteen towns used to go there yearly in honor of Jupiter, to carry what offerings they had. (29; 32.)
4. The towns Elis and Pisa wished to be leaders of affairs. (21, 3; 27.)
5. Sparta took the side of Elis. (33.)
6. This she did, not for the sake of Elis, but for her own sake. (29; 30.)
7. At this time Sparta was a city of great influence. (32, 2; 31.)
8. It was the capital of Laconia, and the chief city of the Peloponnesus.
9. It was situated on the right bank of the Eurotas.
10. Games were celebrated at Olympia in honor of Jupiter. (39; 29.)
11. The Greeks considered these games of very great importance. (34.)
12. The victor valued his crown highly. (34.)
13. Among the Romans, the worship of the gods consisted chiefly in prayers, vows, and sacrifices. (33.)
14. The words of a prayer were considered of the greatest importance. (34.)
15. He who made a vow was called a defendant of his vow. (21, 2.)
Exercise 3

1. After the death of Aristides the leader of one party in Athens was Cimon, a son of Miltiades.

2. He was a man of great influence, and, at first, all valued his opinion highly. (31; 34.)

3. Remembering the recent war, he thought it a wise measure for the Athenians to unite with the Spartans for the purpose of defending themselves against the Persians. (36; 33; 40.)

4. Pericles, the leader of the other party, did not favor this plan, for the Spartans usually did more for Sparta's sake than for that of Greece. (29.)

5. Never did they forget themselves and their own interests. (36.)

6. On the side of Cimon were the nobles; on that of Pericles, the people. (33.)

7. Since the Athenians thought that it was of great importance to themselves and to Attica, they formed an alliance with the Argives, enemies of the Spartans. (38; 17.)

8. When Cimon was accused of treason and exiled, very few pitied him. (35; 37.)

9. He did not forget his father, who also had been exiled. (36.)

Suggestions

In sentence 3, observe that the word remembering shows Cimon's reason for thinking it wise, etc. Express this thought by using cum with the subjunctive of the defective verb memini (see Grammar), or the verb teneō, with which verb the noun memoria must be used.

Do not let the word for in sentence 3 mislead you, but remember to use the infinitive with subject accusative after the verb of thinking. Observe the same construction in 7.
41. Both an indirect object in the dative and a direct object in the accusative are used with transitive verbs:

*Rēx eī urbem dōnāvit*, the king gave him a city.

42. While many verbs meaning to benefit, injure, favor, help, please, trust, persuade, pardon, command, obey, and the like, are used with an object in the dative, one should not rely upon the English meaning for the construction to be used. This must be learned from observation.

The dative *tībi* in the sentence *Tībi nōn nocent*, *they are not harming you*, shows that *nocent* is intransitive.

The accusative *tē* in the sentence *Tē non laedunt*, *they are not harming you*, shows that *laedunt* is transitive.

43. A verb which takes an object in the dative is used impersonally in the passive voice and retains its dative:

*Active.* *Tībi nocent*, they harm you.

*Passive.* *Tībi nocētur*, you are being harmed.

44. Some verbs may be used with either a dative or an accusative, but to express a different idea:

*Servi dominis metuēbant*, the slaves feared for their masters.

*Servi dominōs metuēbant*, slaves feared their masters.

*Tē cōnsulunt*, they ask your advice.

*Tībi cōnsulunt*, they consult your interest.

*Gloriam cupit*, he is eager for glory.

*Cupit Helvētiis*, he is devoted to the Helvetians.

45. Possession may be shown by both the genitive and the dative:
Pueri liber est, it is the boy's book. (He is the owner of the book.)

Puerō liber est, the boy has a book. (The possession may be but temporary.)

In this connection, learn the following:

I have; mihi est, or habeō.
You have, tibi est, or habēs.
He has, ei est, or habet.
We have, nōbis est, or habēmus.
You have, vōbis est, or habētis.
They have, eīs est, or habent.

46. If the possessor is first or second person, permanent ownership may be shown by a possessive pronoun agreeing in gender, number, and case with the object possessed:

Nostra domus in summō colle posita est, our house is on the top of a hill.

47. There are many adjectives with which a dative may be used:

Deō similis, like a god.
Castris idōneus locus, a place suitable for a camp.
Nōbis amicus, friendly to us.
Proximī Germānīs, next to the Germans.
Militibus iūcundum, pleasant for soldiers.
Graeciae utile, useful for Greece.
Eīs benīgnus, kind to them.

48. Observe that, with some adjectives, the object for which may be expressed by the accusative with ad:

Ad multās rēs utile est, it is useful for many things.

Also, that the object toward which may be expressed by the accusative with in:

In eōs crūdēlis erat, he was cruel to them.
49. Remember that with the verb esse, and frequently with verbs of motion, there may be two datives, one denoting what a thing tends to be, or is meant to be, the other showing the person interested. The dative of tendency or purpose is singular and is usually an abstract noun. Examples of this dative are auxiliō, bonō, contemptui, cūrae, dētrimentō, impedimentō, odiō, onerī, ērnāmentō, praesidiō, salūtī, subsidiō, ūsuī:

Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī Haedui miserant, the Haedui had sent cavalry for the purpose of aiding Caesar.

Cui bonō est? Who is the gainer? To whom is it a benefit?

Hominibus Gallis brevitās nostra contempitūi est, our short stature is an object of contempt to the Gauls.

Haec sibi sunt cūrae, these things are his business.

Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ērnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, the friendship of the Roman people ought to be an honor and a protection to him, not a detriment.

Gallis magnō erat impedimentō, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.

Odiō sum Rōmānīs, I am an object of hatred to the Romans.

Multīs onerī vita erat, to many was life a burden.

Eīs salūtī erat, it proved a means of safety to them.

Eōs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit, he sends them as a relief to the townspeople.

Magnō nōbis ūsuī erant, they were of great use to us.

50. The use of the dative of the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation and the compound tenses of the passive voice may be best understood from examples, which it would be well to learn:
I. I must rise, mihi surgendum est.
You must rise, tibi surgendum est.
He must rise, ei surgendum est.
We must rise, nobis surgendum est.
You must rise, vobis surgendum est.
They must rise, eis surgendum est.

It will be seen from the above that the English personal subject is expressed in Latin by the dative of the agent, and the intransitive English verb is rendered in Latin by the impersonal form of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

2. I must send the money, mihi pecūnia mittenda est.
You must send the money, tibi pecūnia mittenda est.
He must send the money, ei pecūnia mittenda est.
We must send the money, nobis pecūnia mittenda est.
You must send the money, vobis pecūnia mittenda est.
They must send the money, eis pecūnia mittenda est.

Here also it will be observed that the English personal subject is expressed in Latin by the dative of the agent.

The transitive English verb, however, is rendered in Latin by the personal form of the passive periphrastic conjugation, and the English object, by the Latin subject.

3. I must obey the law, mihi légī pārendum est.
You must obey the law, tibi légī pārendum est.
He must obey the law, ei légī pārendum est.
We must obey the law, nobis légī pārendum est.
You must obey the law, vobis légī pārendum est.
They must obey the law, eis légī pārendum est.

Again is the English personal subject expressed in Latin by the dative of the agent.

The transitive English verb, however, is rendered in Latin by an intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive with the dative of the object (43).
4. I must obey the tribune, a mē tribūnō pārendum est.
   You must obey the tribune, abs tē tribūnō pārendum est.
   He must obey the tribune, ab eō tribūnō pārendum est.
   We must obey the tribune, a nōbis tribūnō pārendum est.
   You must obey the tribune, a vōbis tribūnō pārendum est.
   They must obey the tribune, ab eis tribūnō pārendum est.

In sentences of the above type, for the purpose of avoiding ambiguity, express the English personal subject by the ablative of the agent, which ablative requires the preposition ā or ab.

5. I have provided, mihi prōvisum est.

Here the English personal subject may be rendered in Latin by the dative of the agent used with a compound tense of the passive voice.

51. A dative may be used with a noun derived from a verb that governs the dative:

   Obtemperātiō lēgibus, obedience to laws.

Exercise 4

1. By the laws of the twelve tables, Roman debtors were given up to their creditors, to be bound with fetters and cords.

2. For this reason they were called Nexi, Obaerati, or Addicti.

3. When a Roman was in debt and could not obtain security within sixty days, his effects were given to his creditors.

4. At this time, the houses of the nobles were useful for many things. (32; 48.)

5. They had prisons attached to them, and these were, at times, full of plebeian debtors.
6. Life was a great burden to a debtor. (49.)

7. Tribunes were created to protect the plebeians, to whom the nobles had been cruel. (49; 48.)

8. No longer did the plebeians fear for themselves, because the tribunes were now kind to them.

9. Whoever did not obey the veto of a tribune, was immediately ordered to be led to prison by a ‘viator.’

10. One by whom a tribune was harmed in word or deed was held accursed, and his goods were sold by the state. (50, 4.)

11. Toward such a person the law was very severe. (48.)

12. It was lawful for the tribunes to bring any one into a ‘contio’ and compel him to reply to their questions.

Exercise 5

1. In early times the Athenians had no written laws. (45.)

2. The nobles announced the laws to the people.

3. The former never consulted the latter, but usually worked for their own interests. (44.)

4. The latter feared the nobles, and at the same time feared for their friends. (44.)

5. Written laws are always a great safeguard to a people. (49.)

6. Obedience to written laws in Athens dates from Draco’s time. (51.)

7. Of all the Athenians who were cruel to the people, Draco was the most cruel. (48.)

8. At times he was severe toward the nobles also.

9. Solon, on the other hand, was greatly trusted, not only by the nobles, but also by the people. (50, 4.)

10. His measures were a great benefit to farmers. (49.)

11. These were all freed from debt.
12. Those who had had houses in the country moved back into them. (45.)

13. The nobles now had to consult the interests of the people. (44; 50, 4.)

14. Citizens protected the state, because there was no army (to do so). (49.)

15. Solon pardoned many who had almost ruined the state. (42.)

EXERCISE 6

1. Tribunes were so called because they were at first created from the tribunes of the soldiers.

2. A tribune had to remain in the city night and day, so that he might always be ready to help those in trouble. (50, 1; 49.)

3. Everybody had to rise in the presence of the tribunes. (50, 1.)

4. Both magistrates and private citizens had to obey the veto of the tribune. (50, 3.)

5. Even magistrates had to obey the tribunes. (50, 4.)

6. A plebeian had to consult a tribune. (50, 2.)

7. A tribune had to consult the interests of a plebeian. (50, 4.)

THE ACCUSATIVE

52. Such words as diem, diēs, noctem, noctēs, annum, annōs, aestātem, and hiemem answer the question, 'How long?' They may be used either with or without a preposition.

Lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt, games were celebrated for ten days.

Dum paucōs diēs morātur, while he was delaying a few days.

Trigintā annōs nātus est, he is thirty years old.
53. *Milia passuum, multōs pedēs*, and similar expressions show extent of space. These may be used without a preposition or with per, and again, with such adjectives as *longus, lātus, altus*:

**Multa milia passuum prócessērunt**, they advanced many miles.

**Mīlitēs aggerem altum multōs pedēs exstrūxērunt**, the soldiers raised a mound many feet high.

54. *Iūsiūrandum, somnium, victōriam*, and other nouns whose meaning is suggested by the verbs with which they are used are called cognate (*born together*) accusatives:

*Iūsiūrandum iūrāvit*, he took an oath.

*Mīrum somnium somniāvi*, I dreamed a strange dream.

*Victōriam vīcit*, he gained a victory.

*Bonam vitam vīxit*, he led a good life.

55. Keep in mind such accusatives as answer the question, *'In what respect?*’ Among these are found: *multum, plūs, plurimum, minimum, tantum, quantum, aliquid, nihil, reliqua, cētera, id, quid, quod*.

56. While *cēlāre, to conceal*, and *docēre, to teach*, and some verbs of asking and demanding may take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, remember that

"This then is not the only way;
For it is also right to say
Docēre and cēlāre dē;
Poscō, *I claim*, and *flāgitō*,
And also petō, postulō,
Take aliquid ab aliquō,
While quaerō takes ex, ab, dē, quo."
Nihil tē cēlō, there is nothing that I conceal from you.
Illum litterās docuīstī, you taught him his A B C's.
Caesarem sententiam rogāvit, he asked Caesar his opinion.

In changing a sentence of this kind to the passive voice the accusative of the person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing remains unchanged:

Caesar sententiam rogātus est, Caesar was asked his opinion.

Learn the constructions used with quaerō.
Quaerit ex sōlō ea, he makes these inquiries of him alone.
Eadem ab aliis quaerit, he makes the same inquiries of others.

Quaerēbant dē mē ubi essēs, they asked me where you were.

57. Avoid ambiguity in the use of ab with quaeritur, petitur, poscitur, postulātur, etc.

Aliquid ab aliquō postulātur, something is demanded of somebody or by somebody.

By changing the verb to the active voice the thought may be expressed:

Aliquid ab aliquō postulat, he demands something of somebody.

Aliquis aliquid postulat, somebody demands something.

58. Observe the following:

1. Rōmam vēnērunt, they came to Rome. (Rōmam without a preposition, the name of a city denoting the place to which, used with a verb of motion.)

2. In urbem Rōmam vēnērunt, they came to the city, Rome. (In urbem precedes Rōmam.)

3. Rōmam in urbem pulcherrimam vēnērunt, they came to Rome, a very beautiful city. (In urbem with an adjective modifier follows Rōmam.)
4. Ortygium vēnērunt, they came to Ortygia (Delos). (Ortygium, the name of a small island, hence it takes the same construction as the name of a city.)

5. In Ītaliām vēnērunt, they came to Italy. (Ītaliām, the name of a country, requires a preposition.)

6. In Siciliām vēnērunt, they came to Sicily. (Siciliām, the name of a large island, follows the construction of names of countries.)

7. Domum vēnērunt, they came home. Rūs vēnērunt, they came to the country. (Domum and rūs follow the construction of names of cities.)

8. Domum tuam vēnērunt, they came to your house.

   In domum tuam vēnērunt, they came to your house.

(With a possessive pronoun as a modifier, domum may be used either with or without a preposition.)

9. In domum meliōrem vēnērunt, they came to a better house. (With an adjective modifier, domum, as a rule, requires a preposition.)

59. Do not forget that many verbs which in English are intransitive are to be rendered in Latin by transitive verbs:

   Absentis Āriovistī crūdēlitātem horrēbant, they used to shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus even when he was away from them.

   Honōrēs dēspērant, they despair of office.

   Illum nātantem risēre, they laughed at him trying to swim.

60. One meets the following and similar expressions so often that it would be well to learn them:

   1. Paulō ante, a little while ago, a little while before.

   2. Paulō post, a little while after.
3. **Multis ante annīs**, many years before.
4. **Ante multōs annōs**, many years before.
5. **Abhinc multōs annōs**, many years ago.
6. **Abhinc multīs annīs**, many years before.
7. **Post multōs annōs**, many years after.
8. **Multīs post annīs**, many years after.
10. **Multīs annīs postquam Gallōs vicit**, many years after his conquest of the Gauls.

61. Many verbs of making, calling, choosing, naming, and the like take two accusatives, denoting the same person or thing:

**Cicerōnem cōnsulem fēcērunt**, they made Cicero consul.

Remember that in the passive both of these accusatives become nominatives:

**Cicerō cōnsul factus est**, Cicero was made consul.

**Exercise 7**

1. A Roman camp was divided into two parts.
2. There was a space two hundred feet wide between the ramparts and the tents. (53.)
3. A Roman soldier carried a load that seemed almost incredible.
4. This load consisted of provisions for fifteen days, and utensils of different kinds. (31; 33.)
5. He usually carried corn because it was not heavy.
6. His arms were not a burden to him. (49.)
7. With this load he usually marched twenty miles a day. (52; 53.)
8. There were beasts of burden to carry the tents and the baggage of the army.

9. In early times the Romans very seldom used wagons, because they were heavy and the roads were narrow and difficult.

10. When the Romans had gained a victory, they saluted their leader as Imperator. (54; 61.)

11. By this name he was known until he returned home. (58.)

12. A little while after a victory, the Imperator sent to Rome to the senate letters encircled with laurel to inform the Romans of his victory. (60; 58.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. If the work of dividing the camp was going on, use the imperfect tense; if completed, express the word divided by the perfect participle used adjectively, with the imperfect tense of sum.

5. He usually carried shows that he was accustomed to carry.

8. The beasts of burden were for the purpose of carrying the tents. (40.)

10. As Imperator: do not try to express in Latin the word as, until you have decided the exact thought to be conveyed.

12. The general sent letters by which he might inform the Romans of (đē) his victory, or announce it to them.

62. Some of the uses of the word as may be best understood from examples:

1. Cincinnātō, cum esset dictātor, manendum erat in urbe, as Cincinnatus was dictator, he had to remain in the city. (50, 1.)
2. Illi, cum essent civēs, erant praesidiō Rōmae, as citizens they protected Rome.

In both of these sentences the word as suggests a reason, which is shown by the use of cum, a conjunction introducing a causal clause.

3. Caesar cōnsul multīs ignōvit, Caesar as consul pardoned many (during the time that he was consul).

4. Caesar, ut ante dictum est, erat in Galliā. As was before said, Caesar was in Gaul. (Notice ut with the indicative in this sentence.)

5. Ut sementem fēceris, ita metēs, as one sows, so shall he reap. (As you will have made your sowing, so you will reap.)

Comparison is here shown by the use of the correlative adverbs ut and ita.

6. Ille idem, quod tū, putat, he thinks the same as you do. (He thinks the same thing as you think.)

In this sentence, as is a relative pronoun.

7. Prō amicīs eōs habēbimus, we shall look upon them as friends. (We shall have them for friends.)

8. Spērō deōs illīs ac merentur relātūrōs esse grātiam, I hope that the gods will requite them as they deserve.

9. Ad cīvitātem adscriptus est, he was enrolled as a citizen. (He was enrolled according to a state, or for a state.)

10. Virtūs sōla neque datur dōnō neque accipitur, virtue is the only thing that cannot be given or taken as a gift. (Virtue alone is neither given nor received for a gift.)

11. Tē qui moneās dēlēgimus, we have chosen you as our adviser. (We have chosen you who may advise us.)
12. Erant tot sententiae quot hominēs, there were just as many opinions as there were individuals. (Tot—quot, are correlative adjectives.)

Exercise 8

1. Cicero was forty years old when the Romans made him praetor. (52; 61.)
2. At that time there were eight praetors or judges. (32.)
3. These were elected for one year. (52.)
4. Twelve years before, Cicero had made a trip to Athens, the chief city of Greece. (60; 58.)
5. He had gone to Asia also. (58.)
6. He was away from home for two years, during which he traveled many miles. (52; 53.)
7. When he was thirty years old he returned to Rome. (52; 58.)
8. Five years after his consulship he was exiled. (60.)
9. While he was in exile the people burned his house.
10. He applied to many for aid, so that he might build another house. (56.)
11. These were quite willing to give him much advice. (55.)
12. Of course he began to despair of aid. (59.)
13. His friend Atticus returned home at this time. (58; 32.)
14. Atticus usually asked Cicero many questions about his affairs. (56.)
15. Cicero concealed nothing from him. (56.)
16. He soon built a new house, something like his old one. (55.)
17. Not long after he moved into his new house. (60; 58.)
SUGGESTIONS

1. The thought may be expressed by using one sentence instead of a main clause with another dependent upon it: *Cicero, forty years old, the Romans made praetor.*

2. Render the word *or* by *vel*, as this word suggests here a choice of the words *praetors* and *judges*.

7. Express by one sentence.

10. *He applied to many for aid* = *he asked many for aid.*

11. *To give him much advice* may be expressed by the verb *monère* with an accusative of specification.

16. *Something like his old one = similar to his old house in some respect.*

THE ABLATIVE

63. The Ablative, the adverbial case, is used principally with verbs and adjectives.

64. The prepositions usually found with the ablative of separation are *ab, de, ex*; but this ablative may be used without a preposition:

*Sècernant sè à bonis*, let them separate themselves from the good.

*Ab eòrum oculis concèdisti*, you went away from their sight.

*Ego vix abs tè eòrum manús contineò*, with difficulty do I keep their hands from you.

*Extorta est ista sìca dè manibus*, that dagger of yours was wrested from your hands.

*È civitâte pulsus est*, he was banished from the state.

65. Do not use a preposition with the name of a town or small island to express the ‘place from which’ after a verb of motion:
1. *Carthāgine profectus est*, he started from Carthage.

2. *Carthāgine ex urbe Āfricae profectus est*, he started from Carthage, a city of Africa.

(Notice the preposition and also the order of the words in 2.)

66. The perfect participles *nātus, genitus, ortus*, and *satus*, denoting birth or origin, are used with the ablative of source.

The preposition *ex* is used with pronouns; *ab*, sometimes *ex*, with remote ancestors:

*Ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es*, you are his son and mine.

*Ab Germānīs ortī sunt*, they are descended from the Germans.

67. After a comparative the ablative may take the place of *quam* (*than*) with a nominative or accusative:

*Cicerō Hortēnsiō ēloquentior erat*, Cicero was more eloquent than Hortensius.

68. Remember that the ablative of *means* is used without a preposition; the ablative of the agent, with *ā* or *ab*:

*Litterīs certior fiēbat*, he was informed by letter.

*Labiēnus ā Caesare certior fiēbat*, Labienus was informed by Caesar.

69. From such expressions as *quā rē, quā dē causā, quā ex parte, hōc*, meaning *for this reason*, we see that *cause* may be expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition.

70. Where in English we use an adverb to answer the question ‘How?’ an ablative with or without *cum* may be used in Latin:

*Magnā cum lēnitāte fluit*, it flows very smoothly.
71. Remember that the degree of difference may be shown by the ablative:

Hoc quam illud multō melius est, this is much better than that.

72. Observe that the following sentences with different constructions express the same thought:

1. Fōrmā pulcherrima sunt, they are very beautiful in form (fōrmā, ablative of specification).
2. Fōrmā pulcherrimā sunt, they are of very beautiful form (fōrmā, ablative of description).

73. If you wish to express the cost or the selling price of anything by a noun, use the ablative:

Aurō patriam vēndidit, he sold his country for gold.

74. The lack of a perfect participle in the active voice in Latin, and our frequent use of an English participle whose form only is present make it necessary to use the ablative absolute freely.

Do not forget, however, that the noun or pronoun in this construction, as a rule, shows a different person or thing from the subject or object of the main clause.

Caesar, Ariovistō victō, in hiberna exercītum dēdūxit, having conquered Ariovistus, Caesar led his army down into winter quarters.

75. As a rule, use the preposition in with the ablative to answer the question ‘Where?’

If, however, this ablative is used with tōtus, omnis, cūncus, or mediūs, the preposition is often omitted.

In Galliā nunc multi Germānī erant, there were now in Gaul many Germans.

Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur, everywhere in the whole camp wills were being signed and sealed.
76. The following forms are to be learned:

On the right, \( \text{dextra} \).
On the left, \( \text{sinistra} \).
On the ground, \( \text{humi} \).
On land and sea, \( \text{terra marique} \).
At home and in the field, \( \text{domi militiaeque} \).
In the country, \( \text{ruri} \).
From the country, \( \text{rure} \).
To the country, \( \text{rus} \).
At home, \( \text{domi} \).
From home, \( \text{domo} \).
In the middle of the city, \( \text{medià in urbe} \).
On the top of the mountain, \( \text{in summò monte} \).

77. If the ‘place where’ is the name of a town or small island in the plural, or of the third declension, use the locative, which is like the dative or ablative in form: (39.)

\( \text{Athênìs multòs annòs erant} \), they spent many years in Athens.

\( \text{Athênìs in urbe pulcherrimà multòs annòs erant} \), they spent many years in Athens, a beautiful city (in may be omitted).

78. Such words as \( \text{diē, on the day, vēre, in spring, aestàte, in summer, auctumnò, in autumn, hieme, in winter} \), answer the question ‘When?’

\( \text{Eòdem diē castra mòvit} \), on the same day he broke up camp.

\( \text{Bellum Pompēius extrēmà hieme apparàvit, ineunte vēre suscèpit, medià aestàte cònfècit} \), Pompey prepared for war late in the winter, began it early in the spring, finished it in midsummer.

79. Remember that, as a rule, the deponent verbs \( \text{útor, use, fruor, enjoy} \) (in the sense of getting profit from), \( \text{fungor,} \)
discharge (in the sense of performing a duty), potior, get possession of, and vēscor, live on, feed on, take the ablative.
(Potior may take the genitive, and it is regularly so used with rērum: potiri rērum, to get the power.)

Exercise 9

1. The Capitol, built by Tarquinius Superbus, was situated on the Capitoline hill. (68; 75.)
2. In the middle of the Capitol was a temple of Jupiter. (76.)
3. On the right was a temple of Minerva. (For this reason, she is said to have obtained honors next to Jupiter.) On the left was a temple of Juno. (76.)
4. The Capitol was one hundred steps higher than the Forum, and it was the most strongly fortified part of the city; for this reason it was called the 'Arx.' (71; 67; 69.)
5. The Capitol cost an immense sum of money and was rich in gifts. (73; 72.)
6. The gates were of heavy bronze and of extraordinary workmanship. (72.)
7. They were great both in size and workmanship. (72.)
8. As in Rome, so in Athens, Corinth, Carthage, and in other large cities, the principal temple, or the citadel, was called by the name Capitol. (62, 5.)
9. The temples were all filled with sacred offerings.
10. Everything that money could buy was found here.

Suggestions

3. To have obtained honors = to have occupied a position of honor (occupāvisse honōrēs).

5. Cost an immense sum of money: stāre summā pecūnīā.
6. Observe that *of heavy bronze and of extraordinary workmanship* describe the gates; in sentence 7, *in size* and *in workmanship* tell in what respect the gates were great.

8. In Rome (39), in Athens (77), in Corinth (39), in Carthage (77), in cities (75).

10. *Everything that money could buy = all things that could be bought with money.*

**Exercise 10**

1. In early times columns were erected in a city in honor of great men. (78; 75; 29.)

2. There were many kinds of columns.

3. In the erection of these, the Romans used both bronze and marble. (79.)

4. The marble they sometimes brought from Marmarium, a town in Euboea. (65.)

5. By the Romans there were erected many columns, no one of which was more remarkable than Trajan's column. (68; 67.)

6. On this there are cut Trajan's exploits in Dacia.

7. Trajan was not born in Italy. (75.)

8. He came to Italy from Italica, a town of Spain. (58; 65.)

9. Although he was Nerva's successor, he was not his son.

10. The ornaments of the column of Antoninus and (that) of Trajan are of the same kind. (72.)

11. The former column is much higher than the latter, but it is inferior in workmanship. (71; 72.)

12. In the whole of Europe, no nation was more fond of adorning its buildings with pillars than were the Romans. (75.)
SUGGESTIONS

2. Columns were of many and various kinds. (72.)

3. In the erection of these: in his columnis con-
locandis. The gerundive is used to show that the work
of erecting was going on, not completed.


6. To show by means of a column what Trajan had
done in Dacia, it would be necessary to cut into the
column. A Roman would show this in his description:
Into this column are cut the things done (gerō) by Trajan
when he was in Dacia. Observe that the verb are cut
shows an act that is completed. Use, therefore, the perfect,
not the present tense.

9. He was not the son (nātus) of Nerva (66), whom
(dative) he succeeded.

Exercise 11

1. For four days after Leonidas reached the pass of
Thermopylae the Persians remained in camp. (52.)

2. On the fifth day Xerxes ordered an assault. (78.)

3. During the whole of that day and also the next day
the battle raged fiercely. (52.)

4. The Persians were unable to drive the Greeks back.

5. Great was the slaughter of the Persians.

6. A few of the Spartans were lost, it is true, but about
the rest, nothing is said.

7. After the fighting began, a treacherous Greek, Ephi-
altes by name, told Xerxes of the path over the mountain.
(60; 72.)

8. On this account, the Persians were enabled to make
an attack upon the Greeks from the rear, and they there-
fore won the victory. (69; 54.)
SUGGESTIONS

1. For the declension of Leōnidās, see H. 81 (50); LM 445; A 37; G 65; B 22. To reach the pass is to come through to (ad) the pass.

2. Xerxes (H 110 (68); LM 511; A 63; G 65; B 47) commanded that an attack should be made on the Greeks (in Graecōs).

3. Express the battle raged by the passive voice of pugnāre, using the impersonal form, that is, the third person singular number.

5. If the slaughter of the Persians was great, the Greeks killed a great multitude of Persians.

6. Nothing is said = nothing has been said or written.

7. In this sentence we find the English noun in -ing used as a subject. This is not to be so rendered in Latin. The thought may be expressed by using the verb coepi in the passive and as an impersonal verb, with the present infinite passive of pugnāre: postquam pugnāri coeptum est. (See Grammar for coepī, a defective verb.)— Ephīalēs (ae): H 81 (50); LM 444; A 37; G 65; B 22.— Told Xerxes = informed Xerxes (Xerxēn certiōrem fēcit) of (dē) the path over (per) the mountain.

8. The Persians were enabled to make an attack = the result of this was that the Persians were able (imperfect subjunctive) to make an attack.

EXERCISE 12

1. At this time there was no one from whom the Greeks could get assistance. (32; 78.)

2. The laws of Sparta forbade a soldier to leave his post of duty.

3. Leonidas did not fear death.
4. A Spartan could stand all sorts of torture. (18.)
5. When hope seemed out of the question, Leonidas ordered the rest of the troops to withdraw.
6. He himself with three hundred Spartans and seven hundred Thespians remained.
7. These all took an oath to be faithful unto death. (54.)
8. Their heroic acts were not in vain.
9. At that time men were not unwilling to forsake the common cause for the sake of self-preservation. (40.)
10. Leonidas, king of Sparta, fell in the heroic defense of Thermopylae. (40.)
11. People would travel miles to get to Sparta, so that they might read for themselves, on the column erected in honor of the brave Spartans, the names of the famous three hundred. (53.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. No one sent troops to aid the Greeks. (49.)
2. To leave the post of duty = to withdraw from battle.
3. When hope seemed out of the question = hope having been taken away. (74.)
4. Express the preposition cum with definite numbers.
5. Not in vain did they fight very bravely.
6. Leonidas fighting very bravely for the purpose of defending Thermopylae fell.
7. They were accustomed to go many miles in order that they might reach Sparta. (58.)

Exercise 13

1. Bias, Chilo, Cleobulus, Periander, Pittacus, Solon, and Thales were the seven men whom the ancient writers usually reckoned as the Seven Wise Men. (62.)
2. Periander was of noble birth, and he made up his mind to be king of Corinth, not only in name, but also in reality. (72.)
3. He built a palace on the top of the citadel of Corinth and surrounded himself with soldiers. (76.)
4. No one in the whole of Greece was more influential than Periander. (75; 67.)
5. Fearing that men might talk about liberty, he issued an order prohibiting public meetings.
6. In a fit of anger he killed his wife, although he was very fond of her.
7. Then, because his conscience troubled him, he ordered all of the women of Corinth to burn their handsome robes at her tomb, to show respect, as he said, to her memory. (29.)
8. At this time, his two sons were in the country with their grandfather. (76.)
9. The younger immediately suspected his father of his mother’s murder.
10. On his return from the country, he would not salute the king, his father. (16; 76.)
11. For this reason, he was obliged to leave home. (69; 76.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Biās, Biantis; Chīlō, Chīlōnis; Cleobūlus, Cleobūli; Periander, Periandri; Pittacus or Pittacos, Pittaci; Solon or Solo, Solōnis.
2. Made up his mind to be king = decided to make himself king.
3. Surrounded himself with soldiers = had soldiers around him (circum sē).
4. To be more influential: plūs posse or plūs valēre. (55.)
5. That: ne. — Issued an order prohibiting = prohibited public meetings, ab hominibus conveniri prohibuit.

6. Angry, he killed his wife.

7. On account of conscience: abiectus conscientia.

9. The younger (minor nātū) thought that his mother had been killed by his father, or, to the younger, suspicion was not wanting that (quin) his father had killed his mother.

10. He refused to salute.

11. He was driven from home.

Exercise 14

1. The two sons had always differed from each other in looks, disposition, and ability. (72.)

2. In his old age, Periander began to realize that his elder son would not be a suitable successor.

3. He sent his daughter to try to persuade the younger one to return home. (42; 58.)

4. He refused to leave Corcyra to return to Corinth while his father was king. (58.)

5. A few years later, Periander was willing to abdicate the throne.

6. Eagerly did he wait for the coming of the son with whom he had not been happy, and without whom he was not contented.

7. The father had always had confidence in this son. (16.)

8. But when the people learned what had been done, there was a feeling of fear throughout the whole city. (17.)

9. Everybody felt that this was a dangerous crisis. (18.)

10. When the son had decided to return home, he was captured and afterwards killed. (58.)
11. Periander took vengeance upon his captors.  
12. A few years later he died, after a reign of forty years.  (60; 52.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. From each other, inter sé.
2. Periander, old, felt that his elder (maiores nātū) son would not be (infinitive) a suitable (person) to succeed him.  
See H 591, 7 (503, II, 2); LM 1819; A 320, f; G 631, i; B 282, 3.
3. Express both the purpose for which Periander sent his daughter, and her purpose in persuading her brother.  
H 568 (497); LM 1947; A 317; G 545; B 282.
4. He refused to leave: H 568, 8; (p. 279, footnote 2;) LM 1960, 1977; A 319, c; G 423, 2, n. 2, 548, n. 1, 549, n. 1; B 295, 3.

Remember that Corcyra is the name of a large island; hence, use a preposition with it.—While his father was king.  (74.)

8. What had been done: H 649, II (529); LM 1774, 1773; A 210, 2, 334; G 467; B 300.

11. This is not unlike the English expression Periander made his captors pay for this = Periander from (dē) those who had captured his son took (sumō, ere) the pay (supplicium).

THE USES OF ADJECTIVES

80. The English adjectives a, an, the, when definite rather than indefinite are to be expressed in Latin, and usually by pronouns:

The Iliad, Ἰλιας illa.
After a fashion, in a way, quōdam modō.
81. The Latin word *ūnus* translates the English *a*, *one*, *single*, etc., when these words express the numeral *one*:

No one ought to be punished twice for one offense, *nēmō dēbet bis pūnīrī prō ūnō dēlīctō*.

82. If the English word *one* is used in an indefinite sense, show this by the use of *quidam*, *qui*, etc.:

It was stated in one of your letters, *in tuā quādam epistolā scriptum est*.

One who gives quickly gives twice, *bis dat qui cīto dat*.

83. The English word *one* is used with so many meanings that these require many and varied forms of Latin expression. These may be best understood from examples:

1. One says one thing; another, another, *alius aliud dicit*. (The double English statement is shown in Latin by two cases of *alius*.)

2. One is in Athens, another in Antioch, *alius Athēnīs, alius est Antiochiae*. (One . . . another, *alius . . . alius*.)

3. One is in Corinth, the other in Carthage, *alter Corinthī, alter est Carthāgīne*. (*One and the other* suggest two. Use *alter . . . alter* if the reference is to the individual.)

4. One party withdrew, the other made an attack on the enemy, *alterī sē recēpērunt, alterī impetum fēcērunt* in hostēs.

84. In a series, as a rule, use *ūnus* to mean *first*; *alter, second*:

The first class, *ūnum genus*.

The second class, *alterum genus*.

The third class, *tertium genus*.

85. Remember that numerals include cardinals, ordinals, distributives, and numeral adverbs. *H 161–172 (171–182); LM 2404; A 94–98; G 94–99; B 78–82.*
86. Distributive adjectives are used to mean *so many* apiece; these, except *singuli* and *terni*, may be used with nouns plural in form, but singular in meaning:

Caesar *singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs praefēcit,*
Caesar appointed a lieutenant for each legion.

*Una castra mūnita sunt*, one camp is fortified.
*Trīna castra mūnita sunt*, three camps are fortified.

87. *Mille*, *thousand*, is used both as an adjective and as a noun. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a noun it is declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Nom. and Acc. | *mille* | | *milia*
| Gen. | (wanting) | | *milium*
| Abl. | *mille* (i) | Dat. and Abl. | *milibus*

*Mille passūs*, one mile (one thousand paces).
*Mille passuum*, one mile (one thousand of paces).
*Duo milia passuum*, two miles (two thousands of paces).

88. Latin comparatives may be variously rendered in English:

*Longius* iter, a *longer* march.
*Plūrēs*, *too* many.
*Loquācior*, *rather* talkative.
*Prior loquitur*, he is the *first* to speak.
*Sapientior quam melior*, wiser than *good*
*Caelum pice nigrius*, *black* as pitch.

89. A Latin comparative may be strengthened by *etiam*, *even*, *multō*, *much*, *paulō*, *a little*, and similar words:

*Multō maior alacritās*, a much greater eagerness.

90. Comparison may be shown by the use of correlative adjectives; also by such prepositions as *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*:

*Tantum hoc illud quantum est*, this is as large as that.
Ante alīōs pulcherrimus erat, he was more handsome than any of the others.

Fortis praetū cēterīs erat, he was the bravest of all. (Prae with the ablative shows that he was the bravest when contrasted with the rest, who may not have been brave.)

Fortis praetū cēterōs erat, he was the bravest of all; he was the bravest when compared with others who were brave.

Praetū cēterās gentes avidī laudīs fuistīs, you have been more eager for glory than the rest of nations have been.

91. Magis, mōre, occurs commonly with adjectives or adverbs; plūs, mōre, with verbs; plūris (the genitive of plūs) is seldom used except to express indefinite value:

Est magis idōneum, it is more suitable.

Magis audācīter quam parātē pugnant, they show more boldness than preparation in their fighting.

Plūris domus quam solum est, the house is worth more than the ground.

92. Remember that plūs and amplius, mōre, and minus, lēss, may be used with numerals without having any effect on the construction:

Minus mīlia passuum tria ab eīs pōnit, he pitches his camp less than three miles from them.

93. Per prefixed to a positive gives it the force of a superlative:

Hoc est perfacile factū, this is very easy to do.

Perpauci sē ēripuērunt, very few escaped.

94. Quam, longē, or vel may be used to emphasize a superlative:

Quam maximum numerum coēgit, he raised the largest possible number.
Apud Helvētiōs longē ditissimus fuit, among the Helvētians he was by far the richest.

Vel minimum féce-runt, they did the very least.

95. When a superlative is used partitively it usually precedes its noun; so also do the adjectives medius, reliquus, and cēterus:

Summu-s mōns, the top of the mountain.
Extrēma hieme, late in the winter.
Mediā aestāte, in midsummer.
Reliqui Galli, the rest of the Gauls.
Cētera Graecia, the rest of Greece.

96. English offers adjectives in exchange for Latin relative clauses, prepositional phrases, and adverbs; also a noun with an adjective modifier in exchange for a single noun:

Eae rēs quae remorārī solent, the usual delays.
Sine nōmine scriptae sunt, an anonymous letter.
Est contrā exempla, it is unprecedented.
Ācriter pugnātum est, there was sharp fighting.
Īsus eis auxiliō erat, practical experience was a great help to them.

97. One English noun with an adjective modifier may sometimes translate two Latin nouns joined by a conjunction:

Vis et sententia, real meaning.
Religiō et metus, superstitious fear.
Ratiō et doctrina, theoretical knowledge.
Aestus febrisque, a high fever.
Cūra et metus, fearful anxiety.
98. As a rule, an adjective in prose is not used in Latin with the name of a person unless such adjective has become a part of the name:

Alexander, *vir fortissimus*, the brave Alexander.
Alexander Magnus, Alexander the Great.

99. In English, there may be several disconnected adjective modifiers with one noun, but these, in Latin, must be connected:

*In tot et tantis malis*, in so many serious disasters.

**Exercise 15**

1. Greece consisted at first, not of a single state, but of many states. (33.)
2. In Greece, a king was the chief of a small number of inhabitants. (75.)
3. Attica seemed to be a large state, and it was a very easy thing to stir up the inhabitants of the different parts against one another. (93.)
4. The inhabitants of the plain were more influential than those of the mountain.
5. Those of the coast were the bravest of all. (90.)
6. There seemed to be one leader for each district. (86.)
7. Of the nobles, Pisistratus was the most shrewd and most daring; he was always on the alert for his own interests. (44.)
8. The cleverest of the nobles, Pisistratus, for three years tried to become their leader. (52.)
9. One market day, when there were many poor people in town, he smeared himself with blood and rode into their midst.
10. In a loud tone he exclaimed that bitter enemies had attacked him on account of his great loyalty toward his fellow-citizens. (70.)

11. He said also that these enemies were now less than two miles from the city. (92; 64; 87.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. At first, of Greece, there was not one state, but many states.

4. To be more influential: plūs posse or plūs valēre.

7. He was on the alert for his own interests = he consulted his own interests (44) or he was watchful (vigilāns) in his own affairs (rēbus).

8. Tried to make himself leader.

9. One market day (82; 78). Show in this sentence the time of the act by the tense of the verb: He, on a market day, on which day the town was filled, etc., when he had smeared (subjunctive) himself with blood, rode into their midst (in mediōs).

10. In a loud tone or with a great voice. Show, by placing the prepositional phrase toward his fellow-citizens between the adjective and the noun, that his loyalty was great toward his fellow-citizens, not toward others: sum-mum in cīvēs suōs stūdium. (10.)

EXERCISE 16

1. One to whom the crafty Pisistratus had told the whole plan asked the people for a guard of seventy-five men for him. (82; 56; 31.)

2. In a few words the wise Solon advised the people against this, but in vain did he do so. (98.)
3. Solon knew that Pisistratus was naturally cruel, and he saw that the unsuspicious were greatly influenced by what he said. (96.)

4. All these schemes seemed to him plainer than day. (88; 67.)

5. He knew that Pisistratus wished to make himself tyrant.

6. This name the Greeks at first gave to one who became king in a city where the law did not authorize it. (82; 80.)

7. Pisistratus was much more bold than brave. (89; 88.)

8. Twice in one year was he driven out of the city.

9. One party drove him to the plain; the other to the coast. (83.)

10. For the third time he made himself tyrant.

11. After this he seemed not only less cruel to his enemies, but even more faithful to his friends. (47; 48.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. Against this: ne hoc faceret.

3. He knew that Pisistratus was (present infinitive) cruel by nature, and he saw that those who suspected nothing were greatly influenced (present infinitive) by those things which he had said.

5. It did not escape (fugit) him that Pisistratus wished (present infinitive) to make himself tyrant.

6. In a city in which by law it was not allowed (licebat) to be done.

Exercise 17

1. Pisistratus in the latter part of his life became a much milder tyrant than he had been. (95; 89.)

2. As his advisers he chose members of his own family and others of high rank.
3. His own practical experience in many things proved a great advantage to him. (96; 49.)
4. He improved Athens with many lofty temples and magnificent buildings.
5. He had as many poets as could be found in the whole of Greece brought to Athens. (62, 12; 75; 58.)
6. He employed learned men to make necessary changes in the works of the old poets.
7. After this, these works were, therefore, considered much more valuable. (89.)
8. The two sons of Pisistratus succeeded him.
9. At first Athens flourished under their rule.
10. At length Hipparchus was assassinated for having spoken to a nobleman in a rather haughty tone; but Hippias, his brother, was not harmed at all. (88; 43; 55.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. *He chose his own (friends) and other nobles who might advise him in respect to all things.* (55.)
5. *He caused (cūrāvit) as many poets, etc., to be brought to Athens.* H 622 (544, 2, n. 2); LM 2250; A 294, d; G 430; B 337, 7, 2.
6. The statement *He employed learned men* tells us at once that he gave business or employment to learned men. These men were, of course, employed for a purpose, and this the Latin must show.

Again, the necessary changes must have depended upon the judgment of these learned men. This also must appear in the Latin sentence.

The real meaning (vis et sententia) of this sentence is as follows:
He gave employment to learned men who might change as many of the poems of the old writers as they thought should be changed by them.

Now that we have the thought ready for the Latin, let us consider the order of the words to express this thought.

The fact that learned men were employed is important. We have a choice of two words, docti and eruditi, for the Latin word with which to begin, as both of these mean learned men.

A Roman would select the one which in his opinion would produce the better effect. (15.)

Express the relative clause next, then the quot clause, and end with the verb with which we begin in English.

We have not yet expressed the thought in the expression necessary changes. This must appear in the quot or quam multa clause, and necessity may be shown by the passive periphrastic conjugation.

It remains now to decide upon the mode. An infinitive will express the idea, since it is used with a verb of thinking.

9. The two sons reigning (74), things in Athens (77) were most flourishing.

10. Hipparchus, because he had addressed (appellāvisset) a noble rather haughtily (88), was killed.

Hippiās (Exercise 11, Suggestion 1).

Exercise 18

1. After the death of Hipparchus, his elder brother became cruel and suspicious. (74.)

2. Certain Athenians had been expelled from Athens by Pisistratus. (65; 68.)
3. The temple of Delphi, which had been destroyed by fire, the enemies of Pisistratus had contracted to rebuild.

4. Dodona, it is true, was more ancient than Delphi, but there is no doubt that the fame of Delphi was established in very early times. (67; 78.)

5. The builders of the temple not only worked very faithfully, but they did even more than they had promised. (89.)

6. In building parts for which the specifications had required only stone, they had used Parian marble. (79.)

7. The new temple was, therefore, worth more than the old one. (91; 67.)

8. The result of this was that the builders gained the greatest possible influence with the priests of the Sacred College. (55.)

9. In early times there was only one Pontifex. Sulla increased the number to fifteen. These were called 'Maiörēς' and 'Minörēς.'

10. Many think that the former were patricians and the latter, plebeians.

11. The Sacred College consisted of the whole number of pontifices. (33.)

12. The builders of the above-mentioned temple became again men of great influence among the Athenians, who felt grateful to them. (96; 72; 10.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. Begin the sentence with Ā Pisistratō.

3. See Exercise 17, Suggestion 5.

From this sentence it may be seen that the perfect participle shows that an act is completed, and the future
participle an act that is to be. The temple burned by
fire, to be rebuilt they had contracted for (locāverant).

4. There is no doubt that (nōn est dubium quīn) Delphi
in very early times was (perfect subjunctive) celebrated.

5. (Those) who built the temple not only worked with
great fidelity (70), etc.

6. Of (those) building they had demanded (56) that they
use stone (79) in building certain parts (use in with the
ablative gerundive).

8. The result of this was that (quō factum est ut) these
men were very influential (plūrimum possent or valērent).

12. Bring the prepositional phrase among the Athenians
near the adjective great in order to show that it was among
the Athenians that their influence was great: Again did
those who had built the new temple become of great, among
the Athenians, influence. (10.)

Exercise 19

1. To all inquiries of the Spartans, the priests kept
answering, “You must free Athens.” (50, 2.)

2. On account of their superstitious fear, they decided
to drive Hippias out of Athens. (97; 65.)

3. Three different armies they sent against him.

4. The first was defeated; the second was driven out
of the city, but two of the tyrant’s children were captured;
the third conquered Hippias, who had been driven from
one place to another. (84; 83.)

5. An eyewitness describes many cases of heroism.
(18; 20.)

6. In the very heart of the city there had been sharp
fighting. (95; 96.)

7. After many serious troubles, Hippias, in order to
recover his children, agreed to leave Attica. (99; 64; 40.)
8. Hoping that the Persians would restore him to his country, he went to the court of Darius.

9. It was he who pointed out to the Persians the plain of Marathon and the port most suitable for their great number of ships.

10. The plain of Marathon is about twenty-three miles from Athens.

11. One writer says that Hippias fell at Marathon; another, that he died on the island of Lemnos, on his return from Marathon. (83; 77; 16.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. To the Spartans inquiring, the priests answered.

4. Two of the tyrant's children: duo ex tyranni liberis.

7. Hippias said that he would go away from Attica.

9. He pointed out the plain of Marathon (campum Marathonium).

10. Use ab with Athēnīs.

Observe that the expression twenty-three miles shows not extent of space, but distance from one place to another, which may be shown by either the accusative or the ablative without a preposition.

EXERCISE 20

1. The distinguishing part of the Roman dress was the toga, as that of the Greeks was the pallium.

2. The toga was a loose, flowing, woolen robe, which no one except a Roman citizen was allowed to wear.

3. Its use was forbidden to exiles and foreigners.

4. The toga of a rich man or a nobleman was much better and fuller than that of one less wealthy. (89.)

5. A toga of this kind was about fifteen feet long and twelve feet wide, circular at the bottom and open at the top down to the girdle. (53; 95.)
6. One part was drawn up and thrown back over the left shoulder; the other fell to the bottom of the feet. (83; 95.)

7. The part thrown back formed a fold in which many things might be carried and with which the face and head might be covered.

8. In early times, a Roman wore a toga even in time of war; it was, however, much more narrow than the one worn in time of peace. (89.)

9. Afterwards the sagum became the cloak of a Roman soldier.

10. A soldier wore the sagum over his armor.

**SUGGESTIONS**

1. Gēns Rōmāna togāta est; palliāta est Graeca gēns.
2. *The toga no one except a Roman citizen wore* (gerēbat).
3. *Exiles and foreigners were forbidden, or were not allowed, to wear the toga.*
4. *At the bottom:* ab īmā.
5. *In time of war:* in bellō; *in time of peace:* in pāce.

**Exercise 21**

1. As the toga was the symbol of peace, so the sagum was the sign of war. (62, 5.)

2. For years after the founding of the city, Roman men and women wore the toga. (52; 60.)

3. Afterwards the stola was the dress of a Roman matron.

4. A man usually wore a white toga.

5. There were dark-colored or black togas, it is true, but these were worn by the very poor, or by accused persons, or by those in mourning.
6. Every one, whether rich or poor, took great pains to adjust his toga so that it would hang well and not drag.

7. The rich had special togas for special occasions. (45; 86.)

8. In battle a general had one toga, in a triumph another. (83.)

9. The former was called 'palūdāmentum,' the latter, the robe of victory.

10. Magistrates, certain priests, boys under seventeen, and girls until their marriage wore the toga bordered with purple, called 'toga praetexta.' (52; 92.)

11. A young man over seventeen laid aside this toga and put on the 'toga virilis.' (52; 92.)

12. Cicero tells us that the usual time for putting on the 'toga virilis' was March 21, in honor of Bacchus. (96; 29.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Show the contrast in this sentence by employing the figure Chiasmus. (See Grammar.)

5. Those in mourning: express by the present participle of lūgeō.

6. That it might not be uneven: nē impar dissidēret; and might not drag: nec dēflueret.

10. Boys under seventeen = boys born less than seventeen years; until her marriage = until she put on the veil.

USES OF PRONOUNS

100. Ego, I, nōs, we, tū, you (sing.), vōs, you (pl.), are to be expressed in Latin either to show emphasis or contrast, or to separate other words for the purpose of making them emphatic.
101. If *ego* is expressed, give it the first place in the sentence, or put it as near the beginning as the rights of other words will permit.

102. *Nōs*, the 'editorial *we*', either expressed or implied in the verb, is of frequent use. Do not, however, use the plural *vōs* for the singular *tū*:

*Quod ante dēmōnstrāvimus*, which I have before mentioned.

103. *Meī, tui, suī, nostrī, vestri*, when personal pronouns, are commonly objective genitives:

*Nē patiantur dēsideriō suī Catilīnam miserum tābēscere*, let them not allow Catiline to pine away in misery because of his longing for them.

104. As a rule the genitives *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*, not *nostri* and *vestri*, are used with words denoting a part:

*Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are regularly found with *omnium*:

*Nē cui vestrūm mīrum esse videātur*, lest it may seem strange to any one of you.

*Nostrūm omnium memorēs erant*, they were mindful of us all.

105. The expressions *inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē* are used so often that it would be well to learn them:

*Inter nōs differimus*, we differ from one another.
*Inter vōs differtis*, you differ from one another.
*Inter sē differunt*, they differ from one another.

These expressions may mean *from each other* if the reference is to two.

106. *Sē* and *suus* sometimes refer to the real subject, although this may not be the grammatical subject:
Sunt sua praemia laudi, virtue has its own reward. (To virtue are its own rewards.)

107. Remember that meus, my, tuus, your, noster, our, vester, your, suus, his, her, its, their, depend upon the object possessed, not upon the possessor, for their gender, number, and case:

Domum suam vendidit, he has sold his house, she has sold her house.

108. Distinguish between tuus, your, and vester, your. Tuus refers to one owner or possessor, and vester to more than one:

Tē tuaque dēdidisti, you surrendered yourself and your possessions.
Vōs vestraque dēdidistis, you surrendered yourselves and your possessions.

109. Meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester are commonly used where one might expect a subjective genitive; these possessive pronouns do, however, sometimes represent an objective genitive:

Amicitia nostra tuī, our friendship for you.
Tuā fidūciā, because of their confidence in you.

110. Unless contrast is to be shown, possessives are often placed after their nouns:

Maiōrēs nostrī, our ancestors (not our contemporaries).
Nostrī maiōrēs, our ancestors (not your ancestors).

Uses of Hīc

111. Hīc, the demonstrative of the first person, points out what is near the speaker, and its meaning depends upon the context. It may be used to continue the thought of a preceding sentence:
Huius vitia sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, his vices were balanced by his virtues. (The vices of this person who has been mentioned.)

112. Hic may be used to introduce a new thought:
Eōs hoc moneō, I give them this advice. (I advise them as follows.)

113. Hic may be used to bring a person or thing in imagination before an audience:
Haec, domus; haec erat villa, this was the house, this the villa. (Imagine this to be the house, this the villa.)

114. Hic may mean a client or defendant:
Hic neque suō neque amīcōrum iūdiciō revincētur, this man (my client) will be convicted neither by his own testimony nor by that of his friends.
Observe that where we say ‘that of,’ ‘those of,’ the pronoun is omitted in Latin.

115. Hic, when used with ille, may mean ‘latter’ or ‘former’:
Ita illum maeror, hōs laetītia tardāvit, as sorrow retarded the former, so joy delayed the latter.

Uses of Iste

116. Iste, the demonstrative of the second person, points out something near the person spoken to:
Claude istum librum, close that book of yours.

117. A speaker often uses the word iste in such a tone as to show contempt for the person addressed:
Quae tua est ista vita? what kind of a life is that of yours?
118. Iste, however, may be used in a complimentary sense:

Fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblīcā virtūs, there was, once upon a time, in this state, such valor (as you might boast of).

Uses of Ille

119. Ille points out an object remote from the speaker:
Ille liber, that book over there.

120. Ille, as a rule, is used of ancient, hic, of modern times or celebrities:
Ille Dēmosthenes, the famous Demosthenes.

121. Ille may express our word the when the refers to something that is well known:
Apud Tenedum pugna illa nāvālis, the sea fight off Tenedos.

122. Ille is frequently used to point out a new or different subject; hence illud is so often found in anticipation of what is to follow, when we should expect no word at all:
Illud nōn intellegō, quam ob rem īre velint, I do not understand why they wish to go.

123. Ille . . . hic are used together in contrasts to mean the former . . . the latter, the latter . . . the former.

Hic, as a rule, refers to the nearer noun, but it may refer to the noun which, although more remote, is of more importance to the speaker:
Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adulēscentiam reddit, laziness weakens the body, work strengthens it; the former hastens old age, the latter prolongs youth.
Haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū sunt, the former are in our hands, the latter in the hands of the gods.

**Uses of Is**

124. *Is* may supply the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person; it is to be expressed if the subject is emphatic or if contrast is to be shown:

*Is sibi lēgātiōnem suscēpit*, *he* took upon himself the duties of an ambassador.

125. *Is* may refer to something that precedes or to something that follows. Where we repeat a proper name *is* is frequently used:

*Is coniūrātiōnem fēcit*, he (Orgetorix, previously mentioned) formed a conspiracy.

*Eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum expugnārent*, with this design, namely, that, if they could, they would storm the fort.

126. *Is* may mean *a, the, such*:

*Is* liber, a book.

*Ea rēs*, the fact.

*Is* es, you are such a person.

**Uses of Ipse**

127. *Ipse*, *self*, the intensive pronoun, adds emphasis to the word which it modifies:

*Ipse fēcī*, I did it myself.

*Ipse fēcistī*, you did it yourself.

*Ipse fēcit*, he did it himself.

*Ipsi fēcimus*, we did it ourselves.

*Ipsi fēcistis*, you did it yourselves.

*Ipsi fēcērunt*, they did it themselves.
128. Some of the translations of *ipse* may be best learned from examples:

In ipsō Pompēiō haec facta sunt, *in the case of* Pompey this was done.

*Nē cunctētur ipse*, let there be no delay *on his part*.

*Vita ipsa quā fruimur brevis est*, the *actual* time of life is short.

*Ipse* Palinūrus dicere nōn potest, *even* Palinurus cannot tell.

*Ipse* eōdem tempore vēnērunt, they came at *exactly* the same time.

*Cuius ipsō nōmine perterrebantur*, at the *mere* mention of his name they were thoroughly frightened.

*Ipse* eōs dūxit, it was a personally conducted excursion; he led them *in person*.

*Satis in ipsā cōnscientiā pulcherrimi factī frūctūs est*, the *very* consciousness of a noble action is sufficient reward.

*Omnia quae vindicāris in alterō tibi ipsī vehementer fugienda sunt*, all things that you condemn in another you *especially* ought to avoid.

*Valvae sē ipsae aperuērunt*, the folding doors opened *of their own accord*.

**Uses of *Idem***

129. *Idem*, *the same*, may unite two or more attributes to the same person or thing.

130. Some of the renderings of *idem* may be learned from examples:

*Idem velle atque nōlle, ea dēmum firma amīcitia est*, to have the *same* likes and dislikes is the most lasting bond of friendship.

*Quid praeclārum nōn idem arduum?* what excellence is there that is not *at the same time* hard to attain?
Nil prodest quod non laedere possit idem, nothing is beneficial which may not also prove harmful.

Oratio ném splendidam et eandem facétam habuit, he delivered an oration that was brilliant and likewise full of wit.

Difficilis facilis, iucundus acerbus, es idem, you are at once cross and kind, pleasant and bitter.

Uses of the Relative Pronoun

131. The meaning of a relative pronoun is often dependent upon the mode of its verb. If it introduces a cause, a purpose, a fact, etc., the translation should show it:

Ö fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris.

O fortunate man, because you found Homer to herald your brave deeds (quī is equivalent to cum tū).

Legiōnēs in Galliam quī dédūceret lēgātum mīsit, he sent a lieutenant to lead the legions down into Gaul (quī is equivalent to ut īs).

Proximi sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, they are next to the Germans who live across the Rhine.

132. Express the relative in Latin even when it is omitted in English:

Haec est puella quam vīdī, this is the girl I saw.

133. An indefinite antecedent of a relative pronoun is usually omitted:

Duōs quī sequitur leporēs neutrum capit, he who follows two hares catches neither.

134. The regular place for a relative pronoun is near its antecedent. If, however, the relative is equivalent to et īs,
and he, is igitur, *he therefore*, etc., and is used to connect, rather than define or describe, it may be separated from its antecedent:

Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē, qui mala in domum tuam intulī, I, Themistocles, have come to you, and I have brought trouble on your home.

135. A relative pronoun may be used at the beginning of a Latin sentence, where we should expect a demonstrative pronoun:

Quae cum ita sint, since these things are so; although these things are so; this being the case.

136. When a relative pronoun does not or cannot refer grammatically to what precedes, it has its own noun following it:

Thēbās, quod est Boeōtiae caput, *profectī sunt*, they started for Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

137. The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause:

Diem dīcunt, quā dīē omnēs conveniānt, they set a day on which all are to assemble.

138. A noun which is further explained by a relative pronoun is placed after the relative, not before it:

Nōn longē ā Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā, they are not far from Tolosa, a city which is in the province.

139. To make a relative clause emphatic, place the relative with its antecedent noun before the antecedent clause:

Quam legionem sécum habet, eam in castra mittet, the legion which he has with him he will send into camp.
140. *Id quod, quod* alone, or *quaee res* is commonly used when the relative refers to a sentence:

*Domum vendiderunt, id quod stultissimum est*, they have sold their house, which is a very foolish thing to do.

**Uses of Quis, Quī Interrogative**

141. *Quis, quid*, ask for the name of some person or thing; *quis* is often used substantively, *quid* is regularly so used:

*Quis sim, sciēs ex eō quem ad tē mīsi*, who I am, you will know from him whom I have sent to you.

142. *Quī*, the interrogative pronoun, used substantively, may, as a rule, be either masculine or feminine.

143. *Quī* and *quod* are, as a rule, used adjectively:

*Quī gladiator?* what kind of a gladiator?

*Quod templum vidisti?* what temple have you seen?

144. Remember the adverbial use of *quid, why*, in the neuter singular accusative:

*Quid tacēs?* why are you silent?

**Uses of Indefinite Pronouns**

**Quis**

145. Keep in mind the fact that *quis* after *si, nisi, ne, num*, is indefinite and means *any*:

*Num quis est hic alius praeter mē atque tē?* there is not any one else here except you and me, is there?

**Quisquam**

146. *Quisquam* means *any one at all*; its corresponding adjective is *ullus*:
Quamdiū quisquam erit qui tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, as long as there is any one who will dare to defend you, you will live.

Quae fuit umquam in üllō homine tanta cōnstantia? was any man ever as loyal as he?

147. Quisquam is found in conditional sentences, when the condition is general:

Si quisquam, Caesar fēlix fuit, if any one in the world was ever fortunate, it was Caesar.

148. Quisquam may be used in interrogative sentences implying a negative answer:

Quisquam dubitābit quin fieri possit? will any one doubt (no one will doubt) that it can be done?

149. Quisquam is used with a comparative:

Acerbior hostis quam quisquam superiōrum, he was a more bitter enemy than any one of former times.

150. Remember that no one is to be rendered by nēmō, not nōn quisquam; nothing, by nihil, not nōn quicquam. And no one, however, is expressed by neque quisquam; and nothing, by neque quicquam:

Neque praeter mercātōrēs illō adiit quisquam, and not any one except traders went there.

Neque quicquam videō altius, and I see nothing (not anything) higher.

QUISQUIS

151. Be careful to distinguish between quisquam, any one, in which only the first part is declined, and quisquis, whoever, in which both parts are declined:

Quisquis dicit, whoever says.

Quidquid erit, whatever happens.
ALIQUIS

152. Express *some*, as opposed to *none*, by *aliquis*:

*Tū quidem aliquis es*, you, surely, are somebody.
*Sine aliquō periculō id facere nōn possunt*, they cannot do that without some danger.

153. *Nescio quis* is sometimes used instead of *aliquis*; *nescio quid*, instead of *aliquid*:

*Nescio quis*, some one or other.
*Nescio quō pactō*, in some way or other.

QUIDAM

154. Some of the renderings of *quīdam* may be learned from examples:

*Graviora quaedam sunt remedia periculis*, *some* remedies are worse than the disease.

*Scriptor quīdam narrat*, *a certain* writer says.
*Nōn solum scire aliquid artis est, sed quaedam ars etiam docendī*, not only is there some art required in understanding a thing, but there is *an* art also in teaching it.

*Doctrīna est ingenī nātūrāle quoddam pābulum*, learning is, *as it were*, the natural food of the mind.

*Quādam dēclīnātiōne corpore*, by *a* hair-breadth escape (by a turning aside with the body).

*Artēs habent quoddam commūne vinculum*, the arts have a common bond, *so to speak*.

*Cōgnātiōne quādam inter sē continentur*, they are connected by *a kind of* relationship.

*Quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dīxit*, *one* of the soldiers of the tenth legion said.
QUISQUE

155. Quisque means each, every (of more than two); uterque, each, both (of two); omnis, every, all, is not as definite as quisque:

Materia cuiusque generis est praeter fagum atque abietem, timber of every kind except the beech and the fir is found here.

Utraeque perierrunt, both wives perished.

Omnis in Ascanio cari stat cura parentis, every thought of a doting father is centered in Ascanius.

156. Remember that quisque is used:

i. With se:
Prô se quisque operam navare cupit, each one is anxious to do his best for his own sake.

2. With suus:
Sua quisque exempla debet equo animo pati, each one ought to bear patiently the results of his own misconduct.

3. With a relative pronoun:
Quam quisque ab opere in partem casü devenit, consttitit, wherever each one happened to come from his work, there he halted.

4. With unus:
Unius cuiusque confession, the confession of each and every one.

5. With an ordinal number:
Censorès sexto quoque annö dilecti sunt, censors were chosen every five years (every sixth year).

6. With a superlative:
Antiquissimum quodque tempus, the earliest times (every most ancient time).
Exercise 22

1. The ancient Romans were very fond of agriculture.
2. Their most illustrious commanders were sometimes called from the plow.
3. Roman senators commonly lived in the country and cultivated the ground with their own hands. (76; 68.)
4. In the time of our ancestors this work was done in some parts of our country by slaves. (68.)
5. Nowadays, however, in our country, no one can be a slave. (78; 75.)
6. The famous Cincinnatus had a farm of four acres. (120; 45.)
7. Roman writers represent Cincinnatus plowing at the time at which he was made dictator. (137; 21.)
8. (Let us imagine the scene.) This is Cincinnatus at work plowing; this, the messenger who has come from Rome. (113; 65.)
9. The latter has been sent by the senate to summon the former to Rome to protect the state. (115; 58; 49.)
10. The power of the dictator was supreme both in peace and in war.
11. His edict was observed as an oracle. (62, 7.)

Exercise 23

1. Forgetful of himself and mindful of us all, Cincinnatus started immediately for Rome. (103; 104; 58.)
2. He knew that it would be dangerous to delay.
3. Therefore, he raised an army as soon as possible and led it in person. (128.)
4. At a favorable time his own army and that of the consul surrounded the enemy’s camp. (128; 114.)
5. He reduced the enemy's army to a condition exactly the same as that of the Romans had been. (128; 62; 114.)
6. By that victory of yours, Cincinnatus, the state was saved. (118.)
7. A dictator even within the city limits was attended by twenty-four lictors carrying the fasces and the axes. (128.)
8. Cincinnatus resigned the dictatorship in fourteen days. (64; 78.)
9. He was very glad when the day on which he could return to his home came. (137; 58, 8.)
10. When he was an old man, he was likewise chosen dictator, and again there was no delay on his part when he was summoned to Rome. (130; 128; 58, 1.)
11. Very often, Romans, did Cincinnatus show his friendship for you.

SUGGESTIONS

2. That it would be dangerous to delay: morāri futūrum esse periculōsum.
4. In the expression that of the consul, that is not to be translated.
8. Resigned the dictatorship: sē dictātūrā abdicāvit.
10. He, old, was likewise chosen dictator, and again (when) summoned to Rome, himself did not hesitate to start immediately.
11. For you: in vōs.

EXERCISE 24

1. (It was) in the war with the Latins, a time at which the Romans feared this people, (that) the first dictator was chosen. (138; 44.)
2. There were certain things which the Romans did not allow a dictator to do. (154.)
3. One who had been made dictator had to remain in Italy, where he had been appointed. (82; 21, 2; 50, 1.)

4. He could not go out of Italy—a statement that I have already made. (140.)

5. This was violated only once, when Atilius is said to have gone to Athens, which was the capital of Attica. (135; 136.)

6. The infantry, in which the people had confidence, was the strength of the Roman army. (16.)

7. For this reason a dictator was not allowed to appear on horseback. (69.)

8. He, however, usually chose the one whom he thought suitable for master of horse. (Exercise 14, Suggestion 2.)

9. A dictator resigned when he had finished the business for which he had been appointed.

10. The day came on which there were no dictators—in name. (137.)

Exercise 25

1. Every Roman wished to have his own villa. (156, 2.)

2. A Roman villa was not unlike a small city. (47.)

3. It had buildings of every kind. (45; 155.)

4. Every villa had its own park of many acres; every villa had also a tower, in which there was a dining room, where the guests while reclining at table might enjoy a beautiful view. (45; 106; 156, 2.)

5. Wherever a Roman built a villa, he cultivated many beautiful trees and flowers. (156, 3.)

6. In the garden of each villa there were placed many beautiful statues. (155.)

7. Every two years the rich used to set out trees in their villas. (156, 5.)
8. The most beautiful gardens were sometimes watered, when there was no water in the ground, by the water conveyed in pipes. (156, 6.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *For himself (pro sé) each one wished.*
2. *In which places a Roman built a villa, in those places, etc.*
3. *By the water led to them through lead pipes.*

Exercise 26

1. If any one was always firm or mild, as occasion required, it was Caesar. (146.)
2. He was no ordinary man.
3. No one, it is true, was a more bitter enemy in time of war.
4. Does any one doubt that he was a much more faithful friend, after the war was over, than was any one of his contemporaries? (148; 89; 74; 78.)
5. Not only men, but also animals, loved him.
6. When he was in Gaul, he rode a horse which no one else dared to mount. (11.)
7. He was singularly careful of his soldiers, and no one was more loved by his men. (150; 68.)
8. There was no undertaking so difficult that he could not carry it through successfully.
9. Did any general ever show so much pity toward those whom he had conquered?
10. He was always willing to help his soldiers without asking anything in return. (150.)
11. Caesar’s lieutenants except Labienus were all faithful to him.
SUGGESTIONS

I. As occasion required is equivalent to as the thing demanded.

3. In bellō will express in time of war.

4. Keep in mind the fact that the verb dubitō, meaning doubt, regularly takes quīn with the subjunctive; also, that the tense must be carefully observed.

In this sentence express was by the perfect subjunctive.

Contemporaries are ‘those living at the same time.’

7. He protected (cōnservāvit) his (soldiers) very diligently.

8. There was nothing so difficult which he could not finish (cōnficere nōn posset).

9. Was there in any general so much pity for (in) the conquered (accusative)?

Introduce this question by num.

10. To his own (men) always was he willing to give aid, and not anything from them (ab iīs) did he demand (repetēbat).

Questions

157. ‘Yes’ and ‘No’ questions are usually shown by:

-ne (enclitic), when an answer is desired; nōnne, when the answer yes is expected; num, when the answer no is expected:

Ībisne, will you go?
Nōnne ībis, you will go, will you not? will you not go?
Num ībis, you will not go, will you?

158. Do not use ne, nōnne, num, if there is an interrogative word in the sentence:

Hōra quota est? what time is it?
Ut valēs? how do you do? how are you?
Quid agis? any news?
Ecquid fit? where in the world are we?

159. Do not forget the following interrogatives which are in common use:

cūr, adv., for what reason? why?
quā dē causā, for what reason? why?
quam ob rem, for what reason? why?
quā rē, for what reason? why?
quālis, e, adj., of what kind?
quam multi, how many?
quandō, adv., when?
quantus, a, um, adj., how large?
quem ad modum, how?
quīn, adv., why not?
quīs | quid | quis | quod | interrogr. pro., who? which? what?
quī, | quod | qui | pro., | adverbial accusative, why?
quō, adv., to what place? whither?
quot, indeclinable adj., how many?
quotiēns, adv., how many times?
ubi, adv., where? in what place? when?
unde, adv., from what place? whence?
ut, adv., how?
uter, utra, utrum, adj., which of two?

160. At times the interrogative particle is omitted; especially is this the case when surprise, indignation, or censure is shown:

Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentis? don't you feel that your schemes are known?
161. The following will show that a Roman sometimes expressed surprise, indignation, or an impossible supposition in the form of a question:

Tū ut umquam té corrigās? *you* ever reform? (Impossible.)

Dictātōremne ex urbe exīre? *a dictator* go out of the city? (One cannot suppose such a case.)

162. An interrogative word, except the enclitic *ne*, is usually placed first in a sentence, but it may be moved to the second or third place for the purpose of making some other word or words emphatic:

Ubi fuisti? where were you?

Hī quid exspectant? what are *these* traitors waiting for?

Nunc vērō quae tua est ista vita? now, really what kind of a life is that of yours?

163. Remember that two questions, the first of which is very short, may be used as an introduction to the real question:

Quid? Quid est? Quid vērō? etc., may express the English 'by the way,' 'tell me,' 'well,' 'now,' 'again,' etc.

Quid est, Catilīna? ecquid attendis? well, Catiline, are you paying any attention at all?

164. In double direct questions the first part either has no interrogative particle or is introduced by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*.

'Is the last syllable short or long?' may be expressed as follows:

Postrēma syllaba brevis est an longa?

Utrum postrēma syllaba brevis est an longa?

Postrēma syllaba brevisne est an longa?
165. *Or not* in double direct questions is commonly expressed by *annōn*:

*Isne est quem quaerō annōn?* is that the one I am looking for or not?

166. In Latin, as in English, questions requiring no answer are often used instead of negative declarative sentences:

*Quis tam brevi tempore tot loca adire potuit?* who could have visited so many places in so short a time? (No one could have visited so many places in so short a time.)

*Quid ego Ĭstiēnse incommodum querar?* why should I complain of the defeat at Ostia? (I should not complain of the defeat at Ostia.)

**Indirect Questions**

167. Remember that an indirect question is a clause introduced by an interrogative word and that the clause depends on verbs or expressions of asking, telling, knowing, seeing, hearing, wondering, doubting, and the like.

168. In English we may use the same form of a verb in both direct and indirect questions. In Latin prose, however, the subjunctive is commonly the mode of the verb in an indirect question.

169. The use of the tenses in indirect questions may be best understood from examples:

*Mīror quid faciant*, I wonder what they are doing.

*Mīror quid factūrī sint*, I wonder what they will do, *or* intend to do.

*Mīror quid fēcerint*, I wonder what they did.
Mirātus sum quid facerent, I wondered what they did.
Mirātus sum quid fēcissent, I wondered what they had done.
Mirātus sum quid factūrī essent, I wondered what they would do.
Mirātus sum quid factūrī fuerint, I wondered what they would have done.

In a single indirect question the words *whether* and *if* may be expressed in Latin by *num, si, -ne*:

Num quid vellēs rogāvi, I asked whether you wished anything.

Hanc sī nostri trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant, the enemy kept waiting to see whether (if) our men would cross this swamp.

Quaesivit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī, he asked me whether I should like to go to camp with him.

In a double indirect question *whether* ... *or* may be expressed in Latin by,—

utrum ... an

*whether* ... *or not* by

utrum ... necne

... necne

Rogāvērunt utrum pugnāvissent necne, they asked whether they had fought or not.

Dixit sē castra mōtūrum ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret, he said that he would break camp so that he could know as soon as possible whether a sense of honor and duty or a feeling of fear was the greater among them.

Quaesivī ā Catilinā ad Laecam fuisset necne, I asked Catiline whether he had been at Laeca’s or not.
Exercise 27

1. Romulus divided the people of Rome into tribes, did he not? (157.)
2. He divided the people into three tribes, and each tribe into ten curiae. (155.)
3. The number of tribes was not always the same, was it? (157; 129.)
4. The number of tribes was increased to thirty-five, but the number of curiae remained the same as it had been. (62, 6.)
5. Do you know how many there were in a legion when Romulus was king? (157; 159; 168; 74.)
6. Romulus chose from each tribe one thousand foot soldiers and one hundred horsemen. (155; 87.)
7. There were, therefore, at this time, three thousand foot soldiers and three hundred horsemen in a legion. (32; 87.)
8. Into how many ranks were the Romans at first divided? (159.)
9. They were divided into two ranks, the patricians and the plebeians, who were connected as patrons and clients.
10. Afterwards, however, a third order, the equites, was added.

Exercise 28

1. By whom was the Roman senate instituted? (68; 159.)
2. It was instituted by Romulus, that it might be the perpetual council of the republic. (68; Exercise 14, Suggestion 3.)
3. Of how many did it consist at that time? (159; 33; 32.)
4. There were at first one hundred in the Roman senate.

5. Were these chosen from the patricians or from the plebeians? (164.)

6. They were chosen from the former, and they were called 'patres,' both on account of their age and their fatherly care of the state.

7. How many senators were there in the reign of Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome? (159.)

8. There were three hundred.

9. Do you remember whether Sulla increased the number or not? (157; 171.)

10. He did increase the number, but how many he added is uncertain. (159; 169.)

11. Julius Caesar is said to have increased the number to nine hundred. Augustus, however, reduced it to six hundred.

SUGGESTION

9. Do you remember? Meministine?

EXERCISE 29

1. Did you ask if Roman senators had always been called 'patrēs cōnscripti'? (157; 170; 21.)

2. Those who were chosen into the senate by Brutus after the expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus were called 'cōnscripti.'

3. For this reason we can understand why both patrēs and cōnscripti were summoned to the senate. (159; 167; 168; 169.)

4. By whom was the senate assembled? (159.)

5. At first by the kings; after the expulsion of the Tarquins, the senate was assembled by the consuls, and in their absence by the praetors. (68; 74.)
6. Did the military tribunes or the tribunes of the commons ever assemble the senate? (164.)

7. Yes indeed, and the tribunes of the commons, even in the presence of the consuls and against their will, often summoned the senate. (74.)

8. A *tribune* summon the senate against the will of the *consuls*? (161.)

9. Now, who of you who have read Cicero’s letters can doubt this? (163; 159; 104.)

10. A decree of the senate could not be made when there was not a quorum.

11. What that number was is uncertain. (159; 167; 168; 169.)

**Suggestions**

2. *After the expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus*: post Tarquinium Superbum exáctum.

5. *In their absence*: cum abessent or *his* absentibus.

7. *Yes indeed*: immó vērō.

   *In the presence of the consuls and against their will*: praesentibus cónsulibus et invítis.

10. *When there was not a quorum*: cum senátōrum numerus lēgitimus nŏn adesset.

**Exercise 30**

1. Did municipia, coloniae, and praefecturae differ from one another? (157; 105.)

2. Municipia were foreign towns which obtained the rights of Roman citizens.

3. Were municipia all of the same kind? (157.)

4. Some had very many of the rights of Roman citizens.
5. Did the municipia use their own laws or (those) of the Roman people? (164; 79.)

6. Heraclea, Naples, and other cities preferred to be allied by treaty.

7. Colonies were cities or lands which Roman citizens were sent to inhabit.

8. The people determined how the lands were to be divided and among whom, did they not? (157; 159.)

9. Each colony usually had a patron whose duty it was to consult its interests at Rome. (155; 45; 49; 44; 39.)

10. Towns which had been ungrateful to Rome were reduced to the form of a praefectura.

11. They enjoyed the rights neither of free towns nor of colonies. (79.)

12. The Roman senate could impose taxes on them and make such demands as they wished.

SUGGESTIONS

4. Alia cīvium Rōmānōrum iūra plūrima tenēbant.

5. Put the adjective Roman after the noun with which it agrees.


7. To inhabit expresses purpose. (40.)

8. To be divided: future passive participle.

10. To reduce to the form of a praefectura: in praefec-
tūram redigere.

12. Make such demands, etc.: demand from them those things which they wished.

Impose: impōnere. Remember that this is a compound of the preposition in and the verb pōnō; the former will take the dative, the latter the accusative.
IMPERATIVE MODE

172. Commands are of different kinds. They may appear as orders, requests, prayers, wishes, exhortations, etc., and may be expressed by the imperative, the subjunctive, and the indicative:

Sēcrētō amicōs admonē, laudā palam, admonish your friends in private, praise them in public.

Ab aliō spectēs alterī quod fēcerīs, what you do to another, expect another to do to you.

Quīn abīs? why don't you go away? do go away.

173. Instead of the positive imperative, cūrā (cūrātō) ut, fac (facitō) with the subjunctive are often used:

Cūrā ut vir sīs, be sure to act the man.

Fac cogitēs, do think.

174. The future imperative is found in laws, maxims, etc.; in other cases also, when it is evident that the reference is to future time:

Rēgiō imperiō duo suntō et appellantor cōnsulēs, there shall be two vested with the power of king, and they shall be called consuls.

Īgnōscitō saepe alterī, numquam tībi, forgive another often; yourself, never.

Facitō aliquid operis, be busy about something.

175. Keep in mind the fact that mementō (mementōte), remember, and scītō (scītōte), know, rest assured, have regularly the form of the future:

Mementōte esse hōs pertimēscendōs, remember that it is these who are to be greatly feared.
Scitote hoc in ré públicâ sēminārium Catilinārum futūrum, rest assured that in the state there will still be this nursery of Catilines.

176. The future indicative is considered more courteous than the imperative in a sentence of this type:

Si poteris venire, veniēs, come if you can.

177. The following are for reference, and it would be well to learn them:

1. Audē sapere, dare to be wise.
2. Audī, vidē, tacē, sī vis vīvere in pāce, listen, observe, but hold your tongue, if you would live in peace.
3. Amā nōs et valē et salvē, good-by, God bless you.
5. Carpe diem, quam minimē crēdula posterō, improve the opportunities of to-day, trusting as little as possible to to-morrow.
6. Cautus ēs, be careful.
7. Cavē quid dīcās, quandō et cui, be careful what you say, when, and to whom.
8. Ĉūrā ut valeās, take care of yourself.
9. Dā dextram miserō, help one in distress.
10. Emās nōn quod opus est, sed quod necesse est, buy not what you want, but what you need.
11. Ės, bibe, animō obsequere, eat, drink, and be merry.
12. Fac me certifōrem, let me know.
13. Fēstīnā lentē, make haste slowly, be prudent.
14. Hae tibi erunt artēs, be these thy arts.
15. Įgnōsce mihi, pardon me.
16. Nārrō tībi, let me tell you.
17. Nōsce tē ipsum, know thyself.
18. Notā bene (N.B.), note well, take notice.
19. Pueris salūtem dīcitō, remember me to the children.
20. Pete alta, aim high.
21. Redīte, quaesō, in memoriam, please try to remember.
22. Saepe stylum vertās, turn the stylus often.
23. Venī sī mē amās, do please come.
24. Vide et crēde, see and believe.
25. Vive valēque, long life and health to you.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

178. Negative commands or prohibitions may be expressed by:

1. Nōli or nōlite with the present infinitive:
   Nōli ire, don’t go.

2. Cavē, be on your guard, fac or vidē, see to it, with the subjunctive; the former, with or without nē, the latter with nē:
   Cavē nē eās, don’t go.
   Cavē ignōscās, don’t pardon, don’t forgive.
   Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs, don’t attend to anything else.

3. Nē with the imperative:
   Nē timē, don’t be afraid.

4. Nē with the present subjunctive:
   Āctum nē agās, don’t waste time on what is done.

5. Nē with the perfect subjunctive:
   Quod tibi fierī nōn vis alterī nē fēcerīs, do not to another what you would not have him do to you.

6. Nōn with the future indicative:
   Si invitus venīēs, nōn venīēs, if you are unwilling to come, don’t come.
Exercise 31

1. To a friend who wishes to remain with him in Gaul Caesar speaks as follows. (112.)
   2. Remember that a soldier will have to obey the commander-in-chief. (175; 50, 4.)
   3. Notice carefully all orders and obey at once. (177.)
   4. Listen to what is said, observe what is done, but say nothing unless you are asked. (177.)
   5. If you can do so, come occasionally to the general's quarters; if, however, you do not wish to come, don't come. (176; 178, 6.)
   6. Never ask why something is to be done. It is (the duty) of a soldier to obey without asking 'why.' (159; 152; 168.)
   7. Rest assured that the commander-in-chief will praise you if you deserve it. (175.)
   8. Be bold or cautious, as occasion demands. (177.)
   9. Be sure to gain the civic crown. (173.)
   10. You know what the 'civic crown' is, do you not? (157; 168.)
   11. A crown of oak leaves shall be given to a soldier who has saved the life of a citizen in battle and at the same time killed an enemy. (174.)
   12. Let me know whether you will remain with us or not. (177; 171.)

Suggestions

1. To a friend he speaks as follows: cum amīcō suō conloquitur haec.
   2. Use the infinitive after the verb remember.
   3. Express 3 and 4 in this way: Notice well all (things) ordered and these obey at once. Hear (things) said; see (things) done; not having been asked, say nothing.
6. *It is (the duty) of a soldier to do (the things) ordered, not to ask why they are to be done* (future passive participle).

7. Express *will praise* by the future infinitive. The verb *deserve* has the form of the English present, but its time is not present. Since the deserving must precede the praising, it will be necessary to show it in Latin.

Express *deserve* by the perfect subjunctive.

12. Do not forget that *cum* is an enclitic when used with *mē, tē, sē, nōbris, vōbis*, and usually with the relative and the interrogative pronoun.

*mēcum*, with me.  
*nōbiscum*, with us.  
*tēcum*, with you.  
*vōbiscum*, with you.  
*sēcum*, with him, her, it, them (referring to the subject).  
*quōcum*, *quibuscum*, with whom.

**INFINITIVE**

179. The present and the perfect infinitive, the former more commonly than the latter, may be used as neuter nouns in the nominative and accusative:

*Incipere multō facilius est quam impetrāre*, beginning a task is much easier than completing it.

*Incipe; dīmidium factī est coepisse*, begin; beginning is half the battle.

180. The present infinitive may be used to complete the meaning of certain verbs, the most common of which are:

*possum*, I am able, I can.  
*cōnstituō*, I decide.  
*dēbeō*, I ought.  
*audeō*, I dare.  
*cōnor*, I try.  
*incipiō*, I begin.  
*solēō*, I am accustomed.  
*coepī*, I began.  
*dubitō*, I hesitate.  
*volō*, I wish, am willing.
nōlō, I do not wish, am unwilling.
mālō, I wish more, prefer, would rather.

181. The infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs and expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.

Remember, however, that if the dependent clause is interrogative, it becomes an indirect question and takes its verb in the subjunctive:

Nesciō, inquit, quae causa odii fuerit; fuisse odium intellegō, I do not know, said he, what was the cause of the hatred; but I do know that there was hatred.

182. The most common verbs and expressions of saying, thinking, etc., are: dīcō, cōnfīrmō, fāteor, negō, nūntiō, ostendō, probō, polliceor, prōmittō, spērō, iubeō, vetō, aliquem certiōrem faciō, certior fīō, fāma est, audiō, cernō, videō, sentiō, intellegō, cōgnōscō, sciō, nesciō, putō, dūcō, cōgitō, crēdō, arbitror, exīstīmō, etc.

183. An infinitive that is dependent has no time of its own:

1. The present shows that the action is going on at the time of the principal verb:

Dicit eōs legere, he says that they are now reading.
Dixit eōs legere, he said that they were then reading.

2. The perfect shows that the action was prior to that of the principal verb:

Dicit eōs lēgisse, he says that they read, have read, have been reading.
Dixit eōs lēgisse, he said that they read, had read, had been reading.
3. The future shows that the action will take place after that of the principal verb:

Dicit eōs lēctūrōs esse, he says that they will read, will be reading, are about to read.

Dixit eōs lēctūrōs esse, he said that they would read, would be reading, were about to read.

184. In vivid description, where person, number, and tense are all ignored, the present infinitive with a subject in the nominative may take the place of the imperfect or perfect indicative:

Diem ex diē dūcere Haedui, from day to day the Haedui kept putting him off.

185. Remember that the future infinitive is commonly used with verbs of hoping and promising:

Spērant sē maximum frūctum esse captūrōs, they hope to gain the greatest advantage.

Pollicentur sē itūrōs esse, they promise to go.

186. With verbs of teaching, the person may be expressed by the accusative, and the thing taught, by the infinitive:

Servus puerōs scribere docuit, a slave taught the children to write.

187. When a verb has no supine stem, the missing forms of the infinitive may be supplied by fore ut, futūrum esse ut, futūrum fuisse ut, with the subjunctive.

188. If a sentence containing both subject and object with an infinitive is ambiguous, change the construction by making the infinitive passive:

They say that the Gauls conquered the Germans, dīcunt ā Gallis Germānōs victōs esse.
189. In expressing an English infinitive in Latin, make the thought definite and precise:

Primus venit, he was the first to come.
Laetus veniam, I shall be glad to come.
Cūrā ut veniās, be sure to come.
Nihil mihi longius vidētur dum veniam, I am impatient to come.
Spērō mē posse venīre, I hope to be able to come.
Ut paucis conclūdam, to sum up in a few words, to make a long story short.
Miror cum videō, I am surprised to see.

190. In translating an English sentence of this type, 'It is dangerous for us to go,' remember that the word 'for' belongs to the infinitive and has no effect on the case of the noun or pronoun: periculōsum est nōs īre.

Exercise 32

1. The divisions of the Roman legion seem to have been different at different times.
2. Those most frequently mentioned are cohorts and turmae.
3. The standards of the different divisions seem to have had certain letters inscribed on them.
4. To lose the standard was considered disgraceful, or rather, a crime. (179.)
5. To animate the soldiers the standards were sometimes thrown into the midst of the enemy.
6. A general was accustomed to call his troops 'soldiers.' (180.)
7. A general before a battle usually made a short speech to his troops, who showed their approval by shouts. (180; 16.)
8. Silence on their part was a mark of timidity. (190; 33.)

9. After the speech all the trumpets sounded, which was the signal for marching. (74; 140.)

10. Some of the soldiers were calling out ‘to arms’; others pulling up the standards which stood fixed in the ground; the general riding round the ranks and again exhorting the soldiers to be brave; the soldiers with a great shout rushing forward to the attack. (184.)

SUGGESTIONS

4. Observe that the English infinitive *to lose* is used as a noun; in sentence 5 the English infinitive *to animate* expresses purpose. This must be shown in Latin (ad militēs incitandōs pugnandī cupiditāte).

8. *For them to be silent or not to shout was* (a mark) of fear.

10. Notice the historical infinitives.

Remember that the general exhorted the soldiers for a purpose—that they might be brave.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

191. The following will show the difference between a gerund and a gerundive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GERUND</th>
<th>GERUNDIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verbal noun</td>
<td>Verbal adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Mas., fem., neut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Sing., plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. and voc., wanting</td>
<td>Used in all cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May have an object</td>
<td>Agrees with what seems to be its object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ELEM. LAT. WRITING—7
192. The gerundive is an adjective except when it is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation which expresses necessity or obligation.

193. A present infinitive may supply the lacking nominative of the gerund.

The genitive, accusative, and ablative are the cases of the gerund and the gerundive in most common use.

194. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may *precede* the noun *causā*, *for the sake*, *for the purpose*:

\[
\text{Aggerem petendi causā prócesserant,} \\
\text{Aggeris petendi causā prócesserant,}
\]

they had gone for the purpose of getting material for the mound.

195. Genitive gerunds and gerundives may be used with nouns and adjectives:

- *modus operandī*, mode of working.
- *cupidus equitandi*, fond of riding.
- *spatium pilā coniciendi*, room or time for throwing.
- *spatium pilōrum coniciendōrum*, ing javelins.

196. Do not forget that with the genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostri, vestri*, the gerundive ending in *i* is to be used regardless of the gender and number of the antecedent:

- *Suī mūniendi causā*, for the purpose of strengthening himself (his position).
- *Suī cōnservandī causā*, for the sake of saving themselves.

197. The accusative of gerunds is used with prepositions, of which *ad* is most often found:

\[
\text{Ad videndum vēnerunt, they came to see.}
\]
In a sentence of this kind use the gerundive, not the gerund, when an object is expressed:

*Ad vîdendam urbem vènèrunt*, they came to see the city.

198. Remember that with verbs of caring, giving, sending, undertaking, and the like, a gerundive agreeing with the object expresses purpose; the most common of these verbs are cûrò, dò, locò, trâdò, attribuò, susciò:

Caesar pontem faciendum çûrat, Caesar gives orders for the building of a bridge. (Caesar has a bridge built.)

*Iis pecùniâm hâbendâm ðèdit*, he gave them the money to keep.

199. The ablative of the gerund is used to express time, cause, means, etc. When there is no object the ablative of the gerund may be used with ab, dê, ex, in. If there is an object, use the gerundive, instead of the gerund, when there is a preposition:

*Nôs nôn pugnândô sed tacendô superânt*, they conquer us not by fighting but by holding their tongues.

*In quaerendô reperièbat*, he kept finding out on inquiry.

Cônstitit nê in quaerendis suis pugnândi tempus dîmitteret, he halted lest he might lose time in looking for his own standards.

200. 'Without saying,' 'without working,' and similar expressions of common use in English may be expressed in Latin in various ways, but *not* by the preposition *sine* with an ablative of the gerund:

*Tû quidem nôn abîbis nîsi id fêceris*, of course you will not go away without doing that.

*Abiit neque id fêcit*, he went away without doing that.

*Nôn rogâtus vènit*, he came without being asked.
201. Supines are verbal nouns ending in um and ū. The supine in um is called the accusative or former supine, that in ū the ablative or latter supine.

202. The supine in um is used with a verb of motion to express purpose.

The most common verbs of motion are those meaning come, go, send, lead, bring, carry (veniō, eō, mittō, dūcō, ferō, portō).

203. Among the supines in um of frequent use are: rogā-tum, to ask; petitum, to beg, seek; postulātum, to demand; questum, to complain; salūtātum, to pay one’s respects; grātulātum, to congratulate; frūmentātum, to forage; dēfensum, to defend; servītum, to serve; vēnātum, to hunt:

Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītōs canēs, it is folly to lead unwilling dogs to hunt.

204. An accusative supine with an object is more rarely used than an accusative gerundive to express purpose:

Dixit eōs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse, he said that they had come to fight against him.

205. The supine in ū is used with an adjective as an ablative of specification.

The supines in ū that are of frequent use are: dictū, to say; factū, to do; visū, to see; audītū, to hear; and cōgnitū, to know. These are regularly used with facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; dignus, worthy; iūcundus, pleasant; optimus, best; mirābilis, wonderful; miserābilis, pitiable; fās, right; nefās, wrong, wicked.
facile factū, easy to do.  
dignus cōgnitū, worthy to know.  
iūcundum auditū, pleasant to hear.  
optimum factū, best to do.  
mīrābile dictū, wonderful to tell.  
miserābile visū, pitiable to see.  
Sī hoc fās est dictū, if this is right to say.  
Nefās est dictū, it is wicked to say.

Exercise 33

1. Once upon a time twelve tribes of Greece united for the purpose of worshiping Apollo. (194.)
2. They then had a temple built in his honor. (198; 27; 29.)
3. Deputies used to come from all these tribes every six months. (156.)
4. From these, at first, there were chosen certain ones to prepare laws (not an easy thing to do) for governing the temple. (205; 197.)
5. Oracles, pretended answers of Apollo, were given to those who came to consult him. (202.)
6. There were in different places twenty-two oracles of Apollo, but a much smaller number of those of Jupiter. (89.)
7. The name 'oracle' was given both to the place in which the god was said to appear and to the answer given.
8. By far the most renowned oracles were those of Jupiter and Apollo; the former at Dodona, a city of Epirus, and the latter at Delphi, a city of Phocis. (94; 123; 39; 77.)

Exercise 34

1. The oracle of Apollo at Delphi gained a world-wide celebrity.
2. Desirous of gaining information, especially in time
of danger, monarchs of Asia and Romans of all classes used to go there to inquire what was best for them to do. (195; 202; 205.)

3. At Dodona the priests used to go to the forest to listen to the voice of Jupiter in the rustling leaves of the sacred oak. (39; 202.)

4. At Delphi, the voice of Apollo, if this is the right thing to say, came from a deep fissure in the ground. (205.)

5. In early times the priests did nothing that should be censured.

6. Later, inquirers could get such answers as they wished by bribing the priests, a thing not at all difficult to do. (55; 205.)

7. When the priests thought it best they gave no answer at all, and therefore many returned home without receiving advice. (182; 205; 16; 58; 200.)

8. Although this is so, they, strange to say, returned again and again to consult the oracle, but finally they began to lose confidence in it. (205; 197; 16.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. To gain a world-wide celebrity is to be very renowned throughout the world, hence one way to express this thought is nōtissimum esse per terrārum orbem.

2. To gain information is to learn things about, cōgnōscere dē.

Notice the indirect question in 2, and remember to express it by the subjunctive.

Remember that the Latin imperfect tense may be used to express not only the English auxiliary was and a past tense, but quite often an additional verb or adverb.
**Elementary Latin Writing**

**Legēbat**, *he was reading, he read, he used to read, he kept reading, he began to read, he often read, he was constantly reading, he continued to read, he was still reading*, etc.

4. A fissure is a narrow and open place.

5. *Nothing not to be praised* (gerundive) *the priests did.*

6. *(Those)* *who inquired could get those answers which they wished, after they had bribed the priests.*

8. *Although this is so:* *quae cum ita sint.*

**Final Sentences**

206. In final sentences or purpose clauses, the tense to be used is the present or the imperfect; the mode, the subjunctive; the most common introductory words, *ut* or *uti* (affirmative), *nē* (negative), or a relative pronoun:

Monet *ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspicīōnēs vītet*, he warns him to avoid all suspicions in the future.

*Iis persuāsīt nē īrent*, he persuaded them not to go.

207. *Ut nōn* may be used in a purpose clause when a word and not a clause is to be made negative:

Vēnērunt *ut in hostēs nōn in sociōs impetum facerent*, they came to attack the enemy, not their allies.

208. *Nēve* or *neu* is used to continue *nē*:

Caesar *litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent*, Caesar sent written orders for them not to help them with grain or anything else.

209. Use *quo*, not *ut*, as a rule, in final sentences if there is a comparative in the clause.

*Mīlitēs signa inferre iussit quo facilius gladiīs ītī possent*, he ordered the soldiers to advance so that they could use their swords more easily.
Exercise 35

1. After the death of Darius, Xerxes, who had succeeded him, collected an immense army for the purpose of invading Greece. (74; 206.)

2. Everywhere from Asia Minor to the river Indus he levied troops.

3. He had two bridges of boats made, that he might more easily transport these troops across the Hellespont. (198; 209.)

4. He appointed autumn (as) the time for meeting in a town of Cappadocia. (206.)

5. He made himself commander-in-chief of these troops and led them in person to the city Sardis for the winter. (61; 128; 197.)

6. When this army was about to start from Sardis, intelligence came that the bridges across the Hellespont had been destroyed by a violent tempest. (16; 65; 182.)

7. Tradition says that Xerxes, in great wrath, issued orders for the architects to be put to death and the sea to be bound with fetters and lashed. (182; 206.)

Suggestions

2. Everywhere: nūsquam nōn.

4. Autumn, at which time they might come together into a town of Cappadocia, he appointed.

5. The phrase for the winter suggests purpose, which the Latin must show. (197 or 206.)

6. It was reported to him that the bridges which across (in with the ablative) the Hellespont he had made had been destroyed by a violent tempest.
7. Arrange as follows:

*By report it has been handed down* (*fāmā trāditum est*) that *Xerxes, angry, ordered* (*imperō*) the architects to be killed (*206*), and the sea having been bound with chains to be lashed (*206*).

**Exercise 36**

1. He employed others to build two stronger bridges.
2. Each of these rested upon four hundred vessels, and was about a mile in length, and had high walls so that the horses could not see over them or the cattle be frightened by the water. (*155; 208*).
3. In the spring of 480 B.C., the forces already mentioned marched to the Hellespont to meet the fleet which was to wait for them there. (*78; 206*).
4. On his arrival Xerxes had a throne of white marble erected on the summit of the mountain. (*16; 198; 95*).
5. This he did so that nothing might escape his notice or prevent his seeing both army and fleet. (*208*).
6. From this he might overlook both land and sea covered with troops.
7. From this he issued his orders for his vast army to cross into Europe. (*206*).

**Suggestions**

2. Observe the meaning and use of the verb *rested*. If the bridge rested upon vessels, it must have been placed on them, hence, we say: *Each of these bridges had been placed upon four hundred vessels.*
3. *Already mentioned = which we have already mentioned.*
4. *Xerxes, when he had arrived or after he had*
arrived, caused a throne to be erected. The phrase, of white marble, describes the throne (ablative of description), or shows that of which it was made (ablative of material).

5. To escape his notice is to remain unnoticed, latère. Remember to express that nothing by né quid in a purpose clause. To prevent his seeing: impedire quōminus with the subjunctive.

6. Covered as here used is equivalent to filled, complère.

7. He ordered his army to cross. (206.)

Exercise 37

1. A historian has given the following account of the army of Xerxes getting ready to cross the Hellespont:

2. Before the passage commenced, sacred myrtle was strewn over the two bridges, and the king himself poured libations upon the sea for the purpose of placating it.

3. At sunrise, prayers were offered to the gods, and then the passage began. (180.)

4. To avoid accidents and delays, the baggage wagons and the beasts of burden crossed by one bridge, the army by the other. (208; 83.)

5. The first to cross was the sacred guard of the Great King,—the Ten Thousand Immortals,—all crowned with garlands. (189.)

6. Preceding the king, the Chariot of the Sun, drawn by eight snow-white horses, moved slowly.

7. Herodotus affirms that for seven days and seven nights the bridges seemed to groan beneath the living tide that Asia was pouring into Europe. (52; 181.)
SUGGESTIONS

1. In regard to (de) the army of Xerxes preparing to cross the Hellespont, these things have been written.

2. Before they began to cross the bridges, they scattered sacred myrtle over (per) them, and, etc.

3. At sunrise is at 'first light' (prima luce). (95.)
   Prayers were offered = having called upon their gods in prayer.
   The passage began = they began to cross the bridges.

4. It will be necessary to show by the Latin that the wagons did not cross of their own accord:
   So that nothing (ne quid) might harm them or delay them, they led the beasts of burden, etc., across one bridge, the army across the other. (49.)

6. Before the king, the Chariot, etc., was slowly led across the bridge.

7. One of the most common metaphors used by the Romans appears in this sentence. The words tide and pouring suggest the rushing of water. Here it is the tide of living beings rushing or pouring into Europe.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

210. Consecutive or result clauses take their verbs in the subjunctive; the present and the imperfect are the tenses of most frequent use; the most common introductory words, ut or uti (affirmative), ut non (negative):

   Dixérunt futūrum esse uti omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent, they said that the result would be that all the Germans would cross the Rhine.
Multis vulneribus cōnfectus ut iam sē sustinēre nōn pos-
set, exhausted by many wounds so that he could not stand
any longer.

211. In a result clause dependent upon a past tense,
use the present tense if the act is continued into the
present:

Ita sē gessit ut tibi decorī sit, he has so conducted him-
self that he is now a credit to you.

212. In a result clause dependent upon a past tense,
use the perfect subjunctive if the act is completed:

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut ad galeās induendās
tempus dēfuerit, so short was the time that it was insufficient
for them to put on their helmets.

213. If the verb upon which a result clause depends
suggests the result, use the imperfect tense for a com-
pleted act:

Accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened to be full moon.
Quō factum est ut ab urbe discēderent, the result of this
was that they left the city.

214. Such words as sīc and ita, so, suggest result clauses;
remember, however, that these words may precede purpose
clauses also:

Sunt ita multi ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit, there are
so many that the prison cannot hold them.
Ita mē gessī nē tibī pudōri essem, I conducted myself
so that I might not be a disgrace to you.

Exercise 38

1. When the consul, Minucius, was warring against the
Aequians, they shut him up in a valley and guarded it so
that he could not get out. (214.)
2. When news of this was brought to Rome, the senate said, "What prevents our making Lucius Quintius Cincinnatus dictator? He is the only man who can help us." (16; 61; 49.)

3. Cincinnatus happened to be at work plowing when the messenger from Rome arrived. (213.)

4. So great was the danger that there was not time to raise a large army.

5. With such an army as he could raise quickly, he marched against the Aequians.

6. Around these he ordered his men to dig a ditch, so that no one of them could escape. (206; 214; 180.)

7. So great was the fear (on the part) of the Aequians that they surrendered at once. (213.)

8. He ordered his (soldiers) to treat them kindly. (206.)

9. After Minucius had been liberated, Cincinnatus gave over the army to him, and we have no doubt that he was glad to go back to his home. (189.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Decide whether you wish to make prominent the fact that it was a consul whom the Aequians shut up in a valley, or who the consul was. If the former, show this by placing consul before the name; if the latter, the name will come first.

2. What prevents our making: quid obstat quōminus with the subjunctive— he alone can help us.

4. To raise an army is 'to collect or bring together an army,' cōgere exercitum.

6. Observe that so that no one introduces a purpose clause,—hence né quis must be used.
9. *To Minucius liberated Cincinnatus gave over the army. Do not forget that dubitō, doubt, usually takes quīn, that, with the subjunctive. Notice that the tense of was must be perfect, not imperfect, in this sentence.*

**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**

**215.** In a conditional sentence there are two clauses, the condition or protasis, and the conclusion or apodosis.

Remember that the conclusion is the principal clause, and the condition the dependent clause.

Among the most common introductory words are sī, *if*; nisi, *if not, unless*; sī nōn, *if not*; sī minus, *if not*; sīn, *but if*.

**216.** Often the difference between nisi and sī nōn is not essential.

Nisi, however, may be used to make a clause negative; sī nōn, to make a word negative:

*Nuntium ad eum mittit nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse,* he sends word that unless relief be sent to him, he will be unable to hold out longer.

*Quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur,* if we cannot do this, let us die.

**217.** Sī minus is often used when the verb is to be supplied from the context:

*Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs,* lead out with you all your associates; if not, as many as possible. (94.)

**218.** Sīn, *but if,* is used to introduce a second condition that expresses something in opposition to the first condition:
Sin autem servire meae glòriae māvis cónfer tē ad Man-lium, but if you prefer to add to my glory, betake yourself to Manlius.

219. When a condition is stated as a fact, use the indicative mode:

Si hoc dícis, vehementer errās, if you say this, you are greatly mistaken.

220. Future Condition More Real or Vivid.

1. In this, both condition and conclusion may be expressed by the future indicative:

Si accelerāre volent, cónsequentur, if they are willing to hurry, they will overtake him.

2. The condition may be expressed by the future perfect indicative; the conclusion by the future indicative:

Si castra mūnīri iusserit, mīlitēs pārebunt, if he orders the camp to be fortified, the soldiers will obey (orders).

3. Both condition and conclusion may be expressed by the future perfect indicative:

Quōs si meus cōnsulātus sustulerit, multa saecula prōpā-gārit rei pūblicae, if my consulship removes these, it will add ages to the state (it will prolong the state for ages).

4. The condition may be introduced by a relative pronoun:

Quī perterritī eritis, domōs vestrās dīmittam, if any of you are afraid, I shall send you to your homes.

5. The condition may be expressed by a participle:

Quībus superātīs, in nostrōs finēs veniet, if these are conquered, he will come into our territory.
6. The conclusion may be expressed by an imperative:
   Etiam si Catilina perierit, scítōte reliquós coniúrātós in ré públicá futúrós esse, even if Catiline does perish, rest assured that the rest of the conspirators will remain in the city.

7. The conclusion may be expressed by Ō with the accusative, and the condition by the future perfect indicative:
   Hunc si secūtī erunt suī comitēs, Ō nōs beātōs! if his associates follow him, happy shall we be!

221. Future Condition Less Real or Vivid.
   In this, use the present subjunctive in both condition and conclusion:
   Haec si tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat? if your country should say this to you, ought she not to obtain her request?

222. Present Contrary to Fact Condition.
   In a condition of this kind, we suppose something that is not true now. In this, use the imperfect subjunctive in both condition and conclusion:
   Si tē timērēmus, ita dicerēmus, if we were afraid of you, we should say so.

223. Past Contrary to Fact Condition.
   Here we suppose something that was not true at some past time. In this, as a rule, use the pluperfect subjunctive in both condition and conclusion:
   Si hoc dixissem, senātus mihi vim et manūs intulīsset, if I had said this, the senate would have laid violent hands on me.

224. A sentence may contain a past contrary to fact condition and a present contrary to fact conclusion:
Si hoc dixissem, quid dicerēs? if I had said this, what would you say?

225. The imperfect or perfect indicative of the active periphrastic conjugation may be used instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the conclusion of a contrary to fact condition:

Quid tandem, incēnsīs tabernīs, futūrum fuit? what, pray, would have been the result if the shops had been burned?

226. Remember that in the conclusion of a contrary to fact condition a past tense of the indicative may suggest an omission of what might have been or might have happened:

Pōns iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi ūnus vir fuisset, the bridge almost gave the enemy a right of way (and would have done so), had it not been for one man.

227. Observe that when possum, I am able, I can, dēbeō, I ought, oportet, it is necessary, or the passive periphrastic conjugation is used in the conclusion of a contrary to fact condition, the form, as a rule, is imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative:

Si in hāc urbe esset, is erat mittendus, if he were in this city now, he would be the one to be sent.

228. Dependent Contrary to Fact Conditions.

If a present contrary to fact condition is made to depend upon a verb that requires the subjunctive, do not make any change in either the condition or conclusion:

Si ita putārēs, dicerēs, if you thought so, you would say so.

Nōn dubitāmus quīn si ita putārēs, dicerēs, we do not doubt that if you thought so, you would say so.
229. If a past condition contrary to fact depends upon a verb that requires the subjunctive, express the conclusion by the perfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation; do not make any change in the condition:

Non dubitāmus quin, si ita putāvissēs, dictūrus fueris, we do not doubt that if you had thought so, you would have said so.

Exercise 39

1. Find out, if you can, something about oracles; if you cannot do this yourself, question somebody. (127; 152.)

2. If it is possible for you to do so, go to both Delphi and Dodona; if not, go to Delphi, the most famous of oracles. (58.)

3. Should you decide to go to this place, you would hear it said that in early times, Delphi was called Pytho; Apollo, the Pythius; and his priestess, Pythia. (221; 181; 182.)

4. If you inquire, you will find out that Pythia uttered the oracles from the tripod on which she sat. (220, 2; 182.)

5. Whoever is willing to make further inquiries, will learn that the sounds which she made could not be understood by those who had consulted the oracle. (220, 4; 182; 180.)

6. There were priests to give the responses. (206.)

7. The questioner went away happy if the responses were favorable; but if unfavorable, he returned home greatly disappointed. (218.)

Suggestions

1. The conclusion, as is frequently the case, may be expressed by the imperative (220, 6); the condition in the first part is positive; the same condition appears in the
second part of the sentence; here, however, it is negative. Show this by using *si nōn*. *To question somebody* is 'to inquire something from somebody.'

2. The condition is of the same kind as that in sentence 1; in this, however, it will be more courteous to use the future indicative instead of the imperative, since the word *go* as here used cannot be considered a command. The verb of the condition in the second part is not expressed. Use *si mīnus* to translate *if not*. (217.)

5. *To make further inquiries* is to inquire or to ask more (things).

7. A *questioner* is (one) who inquires. In this sentence we find two conditions, the second of which opposes the first; express *but if* by *sin*.

**Exercise 40**

1. The prophetess called Pythia was in early times a young girl of noble birth; afterwards, one chosen (as) Pythia was a woman over fifty, clad in the dress of a girl.

2. At first there was only one Pythia; later, there were two or three. Had there not been, it would not have been possible to give responses to all who came to consult the oracle. (227; 16.)

3. If the Pythias had not given their answers to the priests alone, the latter would not have had such power. (216; 223.)

4. At Rome there were no oracles. Why would the Romans have gone to Delphi to consult the oracle, if there had been? (223.)

5. We do not doubt that, if there had been oracles in Rome, the Romans would not have gone either to Magna Graecia or to Delphi for advice. (229.)
6. We do not doubt that if there were oracles nowadays, many would consult them; for it would be tedious to enumerate those who in our time try to read the future. (228.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. A person *over fifty* is one 'born more than fifty years.' (92.) *Clad in the dress of a girl* is 'wearing (gerēns) the dress (habitum) of a virgin.'

2. Change the conclusion to the impersonal form of the passive voice. Remember that there are many ways of expressing purpose, but do not use the infinitive. (194; 197; 202; 206.)

3. *To have such power*: tantum valēre, tantum posse. (55.)

5. Notice the idea of purpose suggested by the noun *advice*. *Not either . . . or*: neque . . . neque.

6. *It would be tedious*: longum est.

Exercise 41

1. If any one thinks that Catiline is not guilty, he is greatly mistaken.

2. What would you say, Caesar, if you knew that he had an army in this city at this very time? (222; 183; 75; 78.)

3. If you listen, I will give you the names of those among us who, of course not in name, but in fact, belong to that army; if you do not, I fear that they will prove your ruin. (220; 33; 49.)

4. What would you have thought if the conspirators had been killed, (while) trying to burn the very roof over your head? (223.)

5. They almost succeeded (and would have done so) had it not been for the ambassadors of the Allobroges,
who exposed the whole matter to their patron, Q. Fabius Sanga, and asked his advice about it. (226.)

6. It was the duty of a patron to protect his clients. (33; 179; 49.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Since the condition is expressed as a fact, show this by using the indicative in both clauses. *He is greatly mistaken: vehementer errat.*

3. Observe that the condition in the first part is positive, and that the same condition is in the second part negative. Express *if not* by *si non* or *si minus*. After *vereor, I fear*, express *that* by *nē*. Use the present subjunctive to express *will be.*

4. *The roof over your head = your roof.*

5. Note carefully both the meaning and use of a word. In this sentence, the word *succeeded* evidently means 'burned the roof' or 'accomplished the thing.' *Had it not been for the ambassadors, etc., should be expressed as if it read* *Unless the ambassadors had exposed, etc.* *To ask his advice is 'to consult him.'*

EXERCISE 42

1. This being the case, I do not doubt that even if you had opposed capital punishment you would have been glad to deprive these scoundrels of life in order to save your country. (229; 189; 64; 206.)

2. If you, Caesar, had been consul, would *you* have recommended the pardon of a conspirator? (223; 157; 43; 206.)

3. Whoever favors imprisonment for life is, in my opinion, unjust to those states to which he would have these dangerous men sent.
4. If the conspirators live until daylight, remember that the lives of us all will be in danger. (220, 6; 104; 183, 3.)

5. Think about all your friends; if not all, those whom Catiline hates. (217.)

6. You will avoid even the usual delays if you act sensibly. (220; 96.)

7. Rest assured that no one will blame you if you say what you think. (175; 183, 3; 215.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *This being the case*: quae cum ita sint.
The expression capital punishment suggests death as the fine imposed for some crime. This may be shown in Latin by morte multāre, to fine by death. To recommend a pardon is to advise that pardon be granted to one.

3. *To favor imprisonment for life* is 'to say that they ought to be in chains everlasting.'

Observe that by placing sempiternis, everlasting, after vinculis, we show how hopeless the case is.

In English, as well as in Latin, a change of meaning may arise from a change in the order of words.

This is shown in sentence 3 in the use of the words would, have, and sent. Remember that would is not in this case an auxiliary, but a principal verb; that have is not to be expressed, and that sent suggests a future, not a completed action.

*He would have these dangerous men sent* is equivalent to *He wishes these dangerous men to be sent.*

4. *Until daylight* is 'to the light' or 'to the rising sun.' Use vita, life, in the singular, not plural.

7. Keep in mind the fact that both relative clauses and indirect questions may begin with the word what.
Decide whether this sentence does or does not mean, ‘say that which you think,’ ‘give your own opinion.’ This is evidently the meaning here, hence it is a relative clause stating a fact, and as such requires its verb in the indicative.

**Exercise 43**

1. If you believe what I have said, you will, undoubtedly, consider your personal safety; but if you doubt it, you will not, I presume, oppose our trying to save our country. (220.)

2. How fortunate we shall all be if the case is decided as soon as possible! (220, 7.)

3. What will Catiline care about us Romans if he can reign in Rome, that is, in the new city which he hopes to build where Rome now stands? (220; 189.)

4. Had it not been for his practical experience, the rest of the conspirators could not have accomplished so much. (223; 96; 95.)

5. If Catiline were here now, he would be the one to be put to death first. (227.)

6. Let Cethegus, Lentulus, Gabinius, Statilius, and Ce-parius, who are under arrest, be led to the prison at once, provided Roman citizens may then be safe.

**Suggestions**

1. The word what is equivalent to those things which; hence it introduces a relative clause which states a fact. *To consider your personal safety* is ‘to consult your own interest’ (44), or ‘to think about yourself’ (*dé tē cōgitāre*). *I presume, crēdō, opinor*, when used parenthetically, does not affect the construction.

3. *What will Catiline care* means ‘what (thought) will he have (cōgitāre) about (dé) us?’ Decide whether the word where as used in 3 is a relative or an interrogative.
If it means ‘in the places, in which places’ (137), it is a relative and as such requires the indicative to state a fact.

6. Do not allow the word *under* to mislead you. Those who are ‘under arrest’ are ‘held arrested.’ *Roman citizens, cìvès Ròmānī, not Ròmānī cìvès.*

Observe the use of the jussive subjunctive in *Let Cethegus, Lentulus, etc., be led.*

**OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**

230. The subjunctive is used in expressions of wishing, which are often introduced by *utinam, would that.*

To make a wish negative *nē* is commonly used:

*Utinam nē veniant,* I wish they would not come! Would that they would not come!

231. The present subjunctive is used to express a wish that may be fulfilled:

*Sērus in caelum redeās!* may you live long! may your return to heaven be long deferred!

232. A wish that seems hopeless in the present or near future is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive:

*Utinam adforet* (old form of *adesset*) Aenēās! would that Aeneas were here now!

233. The perfect subjunctive may refer to past action that is now completed:

*Utinam vēnerint,* I do hope that they have come.

234. A wish unfulfilled in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive:

*Utinam ille omnēs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset!* would that he had led all his forces with him!
235. *Velim* and *vellem* with their compounds, *nōlim*, *nōllem*, *mālim*, *māllem*, may be used with a subjunctive to express a wish:

*Velim vērum* sit, I hope it is true.
*Vellem vērum* fuisset, I wish it had been true.
*Nōllem vēnissent*, I wish they had not come.
*Māllem sēcum militēs ēdūxisset!* I wish he had led his soldiers with him!

**CLAUSES**

**Dependent Clauses**

236. In English we do not make a change in the mode of a verb *because* it is used in a dependent clause; in Latin, however, we must observe carefully that upon which the clause depends. Although a verb is not in the indicative or subjunctive *because* it is used with certain conjunctions, these conjunctions in many cases suggest the mode to be used.

**Temporal Clauses**

237. The most common introductory words for temporal clauses are: *cum*, when; *ubi*, when; *ut*, when, since; *ut prīmum*, as soon as; *cum prīmum*, as soon as; *simul ac* or *atque*, as soon as; *antequam*, before; *priusquam*, before; *postquam*, after; *posteāquam*, after; *dum*, while, as long as, until; *dōnec*, until, while; *quoad*, until, while.

The following examples will show that temporal clauses may take the indicative or subjunctive:

238. *Cum*, when:

*Cum Germānīs contendunt cum suīs finibus eōs prohibent*, they fight with the Germans when they keep them from their territory.
Cum esset in citeriore Galliā ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, being in hither Gaul, rumors reached him.

Quem cum ex urbe pellēbam hoc prōvidēbam animō, at the time that I was trying to force him from Rome I foresaw this.

Ille eō tempore pāruit cum pārēre senātuī necesse erat; vōs tunc pāruistis cum pāruit nēmō qui nōluit, he obeyed orders at a time when one had to obey the senate; you obeyed when no one who did not wish to do so obeyed.

239. Ubi, when:

Quod ubi resciit, reliquōs in dēditīōnem accēpit, when Caesar found this out, he allowed the rest to surrender.

240. Ut, when, as soon as:

Id ut audīvit Corcýram dēmigrāvit, as soon as he heard it, he went to Corcyra.

241. Ut prīnum, as soon as:

Ut prīnum lūx data est quaerere cōnstituit, he decided to inquire as soon as day dawned.

242. Cum prīnum, as soon as:

Caesar cum prīnum potuit, ad exercitum contendit, Caesar hastened to his army as soon as he could do so.

Ipse, cum prīnum pābulī cōpiā esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit, as soon as there began to be plenty of fodder he came to the army himself.

243. Simul ac or atque, as soon as:

Simul ac persēnsit tālibus aggreditur Venerem Sāturnia dictis, as soon as Saturn’s daughter (Juno) realized this, she addressed Venus with such words as these.

Simul atque īre in exilium iussus est, pāruit, as soon as he was ordered to go into exile, he obeyed.
244. Antequam, ante . . . quam, *before*:
Antequam ad sententiam redeò, dē mē pauca dīcam, before returning to the subject I shall speak briefly of myself.
Antequam ad oppidum pervēnērunt Caesarī sē dēdidērunt, before reaching the town they surrendered to Caesar.
Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus, we see the lightning before we hear the sound.

245. Priusquam, priūs . . . quam, *sooner than, before*:
Priusquam respondeō (responderō)dē cēterīs rēbus dīcam, before I answer I shall speak about the other matters.
Neque prius fugere dēstītērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt, and they did not stop before they reached the Rhine.
Priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre recipere, in finēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, before the enemy recovered from fright he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.

246. Postquam, post . . . quam, *after*:
Postquam audiērunt mūrōs instrui lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, after they had heard that the walls were being built they sent ambassadors to Athens.
Observe the use of *postquam* with the pluperfect indicative to express a definite time in a sentence of the following type:
Hannibal rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō tertīō et vīcēsimō, Hannibal was elected to the highest magistracy the twenty-third year after he was commander-in-chief of the army.

247. Posteāquam, *after*:
Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnīt, cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, after he reached the Alps he killed those who tried to prevent his crossing.
248. Dum, *while*:

*Dum*, *while*, usually has the present indicative after all tenses.

**Hominēs dum docent, discunt,** men learn while they are teaching.

*Dum haec geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est equitēs Ario-visti tēla in nostrōs cōicere,* while this was going on it was reported to Caesar that the horsemen of Ariovistus were hurling javelins at our men.

249. *Dum, as long as:*

**In freta dum fluvii current, semper honōs nōmenque tuum manēbunt,** as long as rivers flow into the ocean ever will thy name be honored.

250. *Dum, until:*

**Non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum in Santonōs Helvētii pervenīrent,** he decided not to wait until the Helvetians reached the land of the Santones.

251. *Dōnec, until, as long as:*

**Dōnec rediit silentium fuit,** there was silence until he returned.

**Dōnec eris fēlix multōs numerābis amīcōs,** as long as you are fortunate you will have many friends.

**Causal Causes**

252. Among the most common introductory words for causal clauses are *quod, quia, quoniam,* which are usually found with the indicative when the cause is a fact, *cum* and the relative *qui,* which are followed by the subjunctive.

253. *Quod, because:*

**Victōria Caesari voluptātem attulit, quod suum hospitem sibi restitūtam vidēbat,** the victory gave Caesar pleasure because he saw that his guest had been restored to him.
254. Quod, because:
Hanc reperiēbat causam quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsue-tūdō esset, he ascertained this reason, because it was the custom among the Germans.
Notice that quod . . . esset is not given on the writer’s authority; hence the subjunctive.

255. Quia, because:
Nōn quia difficilia sunt nōn audēmus, sed quia nōn audē-mus difficilia, it is not because things are hard to do that we dare not try them, but because we dare not try them, they seem hard.

256. Quoniam, because, now that, since:
Quoniam dē genere bellī dīxi, nunc dē magnitūdine pauca dicam, now that I have spoken of the character of the war I shall speak briefly of its importance.

257. Cum, since, because:
Haeduī, cum sē défendere nōn possent, légātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, since the Haeduī could not defend themselves they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

258. Qui, relative pronoun, since I, you, etc.
The relative qui is sometimes equivalent to cum (since) and a personal or a demonstrative pronoun:
Ō fortūnāte, qui tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēne-ris, fortunate man, since you found Homer as the herald of your brave deeds.

Concessive Clauses

259. In concessive clauses the common introductory words are cum, quamquam, etsī, qui (relative pronoun), ut, licet.
260. **Cum, although:**
Cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, although the battle raged from one o’clock until evening, no one could have seen a single one of the enemy desert.

261. **Quamquam, although, and yet:**
Quamquam animus meminisse horret, incipiam, although my mind shudders to recall it, I shall begin.
Quamquam quid loquor? and yet why am I talking? what is the use of my talking?

262. **Etsi, although:**
Etsi male rem gesserat, tamen magnās habēbat cōpiās, although he had managed badly, still he had a large army.

263. **Qui, relative pronoun:**
Egomet qui leviter Graecās litterās attigīsem, tamen complūrēs diēs Athēnīs sum commorātus, although I did not know much about Greek, still I stayed in Athens several days.

264. **Ut, although:**
Ut illa omittam, hoc nōn praetermittendum est, although I may not mention those facts, I must not pass over this.

265. **Licet, although:**
Licet omnēs fremant, ego nōn tacēbō, though all may rave, I shall not hold my tongue.

266. Observe that the perfect subjunctive may be used in a concessive clause:
Fuerint pertinācēs, crīmine parricīdī liceat Pompēiō mortuō carēre, granted that they were stubborn, let Pompey, now that he is dead, be free from the charge of parricide.
267. Dum, dummodo, *provided*, introduces a proviso clause:

_Magnō mē metū liberābis, dummodo inter mē atque tē mūrus sit_, you will free me from great fear, provided there is a wall between you and me.

268. Keep in mind the introductory words in negative final and consecutive sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FINAL</th>
<th>CONSECUTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>That not</td>
<td>nē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That neither</td>
<td>{ nē aut . . . aut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nor</td>
<td>{ ut nēve . . . nēve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That no one</td>
<td>nē quis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That no</td>
<td>nē ullus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That never</td>
<td>nē umquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That nowhere</td>
<td>nē úsquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_Circumvēnērunt nē quis eōs cernere posset_, they surrounded them so that no one could see them.

_Tanta erat tempestās ut nēmō venīret_, so great was the storm that no one came.

**TENSE**

269. It is to be expected that a beginner will find the Latin tenses a source of trouble. Since we, in English, so often use a tense whose form does not show the time, we must decide, before trying to express in Latin an act or event, whether such act or event is present, past, or future, and then show this time by the tense of the verb.

270. Remember that the English present is very often used, when the time is future; the Latin tense, however, must show the time:
When you come, I shall see you, cum vēneris, tē vidēbō.  
If you come, I shall see you, si vēneris, tē vidēbō.  
He will not start until he accomplishes this, nōn proficiscētur dōnec perfecerit hoc.  
I shall stay as long as you stay, ego manēbō dum tū manēbis.

271. The Latin imperfect may be used to express not only the English progressive form and the regular form of the past tense, but also an additional verb or adverb:

He was reading, He read, He used to read, He kept reading, He began to read, He continued to read, He often read, He was constantly reading, He was still reading, etc., may be expressed in Latin by the imperfect indicative, legēbat.

272. Note carefully the meaning shown by the tense in a sentence of this type, The camp is fortified.

If this is expressed in Latin by Castra mūniuntur, the present tense will show that the work of fortifying is now going on, is not yet completed; if by Castra mūnīta sunt, the perfect tense will show that the work of fortifying has been completed, and that the camp is, therefore, now fortified.

273. Remember that many verbs which, in English, are used as auxiliaries, are not so rendered in Latin.

The following examples will show some of the translations of the English words may, can, must, ought, might, would, let, etc.:

You may go,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{licet eās,} \\
\text{licet ēre,} \\
\text{licet tē ēre,} \\
\text{licet tibi ēre.}
\end{align*}
\]

(In these sentences may shows permission.)

May you live long, sērus in cælum redeās. (Here may is used to express a wish.)
One may make a mistake (It is natural to err), *hominis est erräre.*

You may be mistaken (It is possible that you may be deceived), *potest fieri ut falläris.*

There are many ways in which one may become famous (It is allowed (for one) to become distinguished in many things), *multis rēbus clārum fieri licet.*

You may say this on my authority (Say this (with) me (as your) authority), *mē auctōre, dīcitō.*

They may have been angry, they may have been stubborn (I grant, they may have been, etc.), *fuerint īrātī, fuerint pertinācēs.*

If I can go, I shall do so (If I shall be able to go, I shall go), *si poterō ire, ibō.*

You ought to give your opinion.  
You must give your opinion.

*tē sententiam dicere oportet.  
sententiam dicās oportet.  
sententiam dicere dēbēs.  
sententiam dicere necesse est.  
necesse est dicās sententiam.  
tibi sententia dicenda est.*

You might be mistaken (it was possible, etc.), *poterat fieri ut fallerēris.*

They might have been stubborn (granted that they were stubborn), *fuissent pertinācēs.*

What would you have done? *quid factūrī fuistis?  
If I had said this, you would have come, *si hoc dixissem, vēnissēs.*

It would be tedious to run through all the names (it is a long list, hence it would be tedious, etc.), *longum est percurrere omnia nōmina.*

Would that he had led all his forces with him! (I wish that, etc.), *utinam ille omnēs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset!*
They told us plainly why they would not go (they said enough (to show) why they were unwilling to go), cur nollent ire satis dixerunt.

Read all, if you would know all (wish to know all), legetotum, si vis scire totum.

They would rather read than write (they preferred to read rather than write), legere quam scribere malabant.

He would have such changes made as he wished (he was accustomed to change those things which he wished), ea quae vellet solebat mutare.

Let us go (an exhortation, used only in the present subjunctive, first person plural), eamus.

Let them go (a jussive subjunctive), eant.

Let us go (a request for permission to go), nobis ire liceat.

Let your oar graze the cliffs (permit (that) the oar, etc.), stringat sine palmula cautes.

274. Remember the construction often used with verbs and expressions of fearing. It is natural for one who wishes a thing to happen to fear that it may not happen, and for one who wishes a thing not to happen to fear that it may happen:

Ne eas; vereor, don't go (I wish that you would not go), (but) I fear (that you will go).

Vereor ne eas, I fear that you will go.

Ut eas; vereor, go (I wish that you would go), (but) I fear (that you will not go).

Vereor ut eas, I fear that you will not go.

From the above we see that the real meaning suggested by ne is that, and by ut, that not. Therefore we may say that ne means that or lest after a verb of fearing, and ut, that not.
275. Keep in mind the constructions which are often used with verbs of preventing, hindering, refusing, etc.:

Prohibiti estis in prōvinciā vestrā pedem pōnere, you were prevented from stepping your foot in your province.

Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit, he kept them from speaking when they tried to speak.

Prōpōnit hōs multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frōmentum cōnerant, he says that these are the ones who are keeping many from bringing grain.

Germanī retinēri nōn poterant quīn tēla cōicerent, the Germans could not be kept from throwing javelins.

Dīxerunt sēsē nōn recūsātūrōs quōminus sub illōrum imperiō essent, they said that they would not refuse to be under their rule.

Impedīor nē plūra dicam, I am hindered from saying more.

Quid obstat nē (quōminus) eās? what prevents your going?

Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendi studia teneāmus, age does not hinder our retaining an interest in agriculture.

276. Remember the constructions used with verbs and expressions of doubt:

Neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī, (saying) that they ought not to doubt that they intend to take away from the Haeduī their liberty.

Non esse dubium quīn Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possent, (saying) there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most influential people of Gaul.

Neque abest suspiciō quīn ipse sībi mortem cōncīverit, and suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide.

Note the use of dubitō, hesitate, with the infinitive.

Proelium committere nōn dubitāvit, he did not hesitate to begin battle.
277. One thing indispensable in writing Latin is a working vocabulary.

Remember, however, that translation is not the mere substitution of words.

Observe carefully, when reading Latin, so that you may be able to use such words and expressions as will be an adequate rendering of the thought you wish to convey.

Make a list of the words with their uses which you meet very often, and without a knowledge of which it is impossible to write Latin.

The following are given as suggestions. Note the words and their uses.

278. **Think**

Quis putat esse crimen fuisse in Áfricā? who thinks that it is a crime to have been in Africa?

Caesar mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, Caesar thought that he ought to hasten.

Eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrabātur, he thought that he was returning to his senses.

Nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, he thought that he ought not to wait.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt, they thought that two years would be enough for them to do these things.

Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātum Lacedaemoniōrum adiit, after he thought that they had reached Athens he called on the magistrate of the Spartans.

Omnēs idem sentiunt, all think the same.
Dēsinant prōscriptiōnēs cōgitāre, let them stop thinking about proscriptions.

Hic sunt qui dē huius urbis exitīō cōgitent, here there are some who are thinking about the destruction of this city. Tū ut ūllam fugam meditēre? you think of flight? (Impossible.)

Si hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, ūnīus ūsūram hōræ īstī ad vivendum nōn dedīssem, if I thought this the best thing to do, I should not have allowed that fellow to live one hour. Sē nōn opinārī sed scīre dīcit, he says that he does not think, but he knows.

Rōmulus ad deōs trānsissē crēditus est, Romulus was thought to have crossed over to the gods. Si tē parentēs timērent, tū, opinor, ab eōrum oculīs cōndērēs, if your parents feared you, you would, I think, go out of their sight.

279. 

Know

Scīre sē illa esse vēra, (saying) that he knows that those things are true.

Intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, (saying) that he knows with what danger he did it.

Tē nōn sentientem cūstōdient, they will watch you, although you will not know it.

Āgnōscis odium omnīum iūstum, you know that the hatred of all is just.

280. 

Say

Dīcit montem tenērī ab hostibus, he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.

Negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciām dare, he says that he cannot grant to any one the right of way through the province.

(Observe that negat = dīcit nōn, not nōn dīcit.)
Sē suīs cōpiīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat, he says that with his own troops he will gain the kingdoms.

Perfacile factū esse probat, he says (proves) that it is very easy to do.

Cōnfītētur sē in eā parte fuīsse, he says (confesses) that he was in that part.

Num Īnītiārī potes tē nōn potuisse id facere? can you deny (not acknowledge) that you could not have done that?

(See Grammar for āīō, *I say*; īnquam, *I say.*)

281. Promise

Pollicitus est sē itūrum esse, he promised to go.

Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, he promised to come.

Ad eum lēgātī veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare, ambassadors come to him to promise to give hostages.

Is sībi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit, he promised to act as ambassador (he took upon himself the embassy) to the states.

Nōn, si Juppiter spondeat, hōc spērem Ītaliām contingere caelo, not even if Jupiter should promise, could I hope to reach Italy in such weather.

282. Order

Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to his presence.

Imperāvit ei ut ea nūntiāret, he ordered him to make the announcement.

Nōn hunc in vincula dūcī imperābis? will you not order him to be put into chains?

Huic mandat ut ad sē quam prīmum revertātur, he orders him to return to him as soon as possible.

Obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrat, he orders an exchange of hostages.
Erat ei praeceptum (43) a Caesar ne proelium committeret, he had been ordered by Caesar not to begin battle.

283. Ask

Hos ego sententiam rogō, I ask them their opinion.
Te rogō ut annuum mihi tempus dēs, I ask you to give me a year’s time.
Rogat finem orandi faciat, he asks him to stop pleading (for his brother).
Quaerit ex solō ea, he asks him alone these questions.
Eadem ab aliis quaerit, he asks others the same questions.
Quaeorō dē vōbis hoc, quid factūri fuistis? I ask you this question, what would you have done?
Quaesivit a mē vellemne sēcum proficiscī, he asked me whether I would start with him.
Interrogās mē num itūrus sim, you ask me whether I intend to go.
Caesar Haeduōs frumentum flāgitāre, Caesar kept asking (dunning) the Haedui for grain.
Petit ut ipse statuit, he asks (begs) him to decide the matter himself.
Implōrābant nē sē Rōmānīs trāderent, they asked (implored) them not to give them up to the Romans.
Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret, Ariovistus asked (demanded) Caesar not to lead a single foot soldier to the conference.

PARTICIPLES

284. English words ending in ‘ing’ are often called present participles, although the form alone may suggest the name. Decide just what the ‘ing’ words represent before trying to render them in Latin.
285. Remember that a Latin participle has no absolute time. Look for the verb upon which a participle depends, and from this determine the time of the participle:

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibet, he prevents them now when they are trying to speak.

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibēbit, he will prevent them when they will try to speak.

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit, he prevented them when they were trying to speak.

Reductōs in hostium numerō habet, after they have been brought back, he treats them as enemies.

Reductōs in hostium numerō habēbit, after they will have been brought back, he will treat them as enemies.

Reductōs in hostium numerō habuit, after they had been brought back, he treated them as enemies.

286. English participles that are present in form only may be replaced in Latin by various constructions, among which are coördinate clauses, prepositions, infinitive used substantively, infinitive with subject accusative, historical infinitive, ablative absolute, genitive, clauses introduced by ut nōn, cum, antequam, priusquam, postquam, quod, quō-minus, quīn, etc.

I. Coördinate Clauses

Abiit neque tē vidit, he went away without seeing you.

2. Prepositions

Propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūdinem oppidum expugnāre potuit, owing to the width of the ditch and the height of the wall, he could not take the town.

Multō cum periculō fierī potest, it is a matter involving much danger.
Per meum nōmen rem perfecērunt, using my name as a pretext, they accomplished their object.

3. Infinitive used Substantively
Vidēre est crēdere, seeing is believing.

4. Infinitive with Subject Accusative
Ubi turrim appropinquare moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, when they saw the tower nearing the walls, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

5. Historical Infinitive (Infinitive of Intimation)
Pars cēdere, aliī insequī; neque signa neque ħōrdinēs servāre; nihil imperiō agī; for̄s omnia regere, (there they were) some giving way, others pressing on; keeping neither standards nor ranks; nothing being done according to military rule; chance directing everything.

6. Ablative Absolute
Amīcō nōn visō, reversus est, he returned without seeing his friend.

7. Genitive
Eius partis periculum timēbātur, the danger arising from that quarter was feared.

8. Clause with Ut Nōn
Numquam eōs videt ut nōn auxilium roget, he never sees them without asking for help.

9. Clause with Cum
Imperātor, cum intellēxisset hostēs castra mōvisse, subsequēbātur, learning that the enemy had broken camp, the general followed in close pursuit.
10. **Clause with Antequam**
Antequam vēnērunt, nūntiāvērunt, before coming, they sent word.

11. **Clause with Priusquam**
Priusquam vēnerō, nūntiābō, before coming, I shall send you word.

12. **Clause with Postquam**
Ad Alpēs postquam pervēnit, exercitum trādūxit, after reaching the Alps, he led his army across.

13. **Clause with Quod**
Ex eō, quod vēnisti, tē prō amicō habēbunt, from your coming, they will look upon you as a friend.

14. **Clause with Quōminus**
Nōn dēterrent quōminus eās, they cannot prevent your going.

15. **Clause with Quīn**
Facere nōn possum quīn putem haec esse vēra, I cannot help thinking that this is true.

287. The following examples will show some of the Latin forms of expression for English participles whose form is past:

Quod suprá dēmōnstrāvimus est vērum, the aforesaid or above-mentioned is true.

Cum periculō lēgātum misērunt, the sending of an ambassador was attended with danger.

Hostilis expugnātiō erat, it was an attack made by an enemy.

Propter avāritiam in Asiam profectus est, prompted by avarice, he started for Asia.
Nequitiae erat metus, it was fear caused by inefficiency.
Flūmen est Arar, there is a river called the Arar.
Virum, Glabriōnem, délēgerunt, they chose a man named Glabrio.

288. When present and perfect participles are used as adjectives, that is, when time is not considered, they may be compared:
Frātris amantissimi maerōre moveor, I am affected by the grief of a most loving brother.
Sē parātissimōs cōnfirmāvērunt, they said that they were very well prepared.

289. A participle in agreement with a noun is often used in Latin, when we should expect a noun with a limiting genitive.
This use is common, especially when the verbal form of the noun is seldom found.
Among the constructions so used are found the nominative, genitive, accusative with ante, ob, post, the ablative with ab, from, the ablative without a preposition, etc.

1. Nominative
Vāsa fictilia iacta eōs perterrēbant, the throwing of earthen jars frightened them.

2. Genitive
Caesarem ad bellum incitābat iniūria retentōrum equi-
tum Rōmānōrum, the wrong done in the retaining of the Roman knights incited Caesar to war.

3. Accusative with Ante
Ante cīvitātem datam in urbe erat, he was in the city before the granting of citizenship.
4. Accusative with Ob

Ob civem Rōmānum servātum in beneficiis ad aerārium délātus est, on account of the saving of a Roman citizen, he received honorable mention.

5. Accusative with Post

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius Tūsculum sē contulit, the third year after the expulsion of the kings, Tarquinius went to Tusculum.

6. Ablative with Ab

Annō trecentēsimō et alterō ab urbe conditā imperium cōnsulāre cessāvit, in the three hundred and second year after the founding of Rome the consular government came to an end.

7. Ablative without a Preposition

Domō ineunte vēre exiit, he left home at the beginning of spring.

290. Keep in mind the fact that, although the gerundive and the perfect passive participle may translate the same English words, they do not express the same thought. The gerundive expresses something that is being done, or is to be done; the perfect participle, something that has been done, and is, therefore, completed:

Male rē gestā fortūna déluerat, because things had been badly managed, fortune had failed them.

Male gerendō negotiō in vetere aere aliēnō vacillant, because their business is being badly managed they are staggering under their long-standing debt.

291. Habēre, to have, and tenēre, to hold, with a perfect participle in the accusative, call attention to the fact that what has been eagerly desired is now accomplished:
Omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmi dicēbant, the Remi said that they had all the facts in their possession.

Constrictam tenēri coniūrātiōnem non vidēs? don’t you see that your conspiracy is held in check?

Exercise 44

1. After a victory a Roman general in the presence of the whole army gave rewards to those who deserved them. (74.)

2. After the distribution of the rest of the prizes the civic crown was given for the saving of a Roman citizen and at the same time the killing of an enemy. (289, 4 and 5.)

3. By the order of the general the one who had been saved might present this to his preserver. (82.)

4. To a general a triumph was a great honor. (49.)

5. When celebrating a triumph he started from the Campus Martius so that all might have a better view of him. (209.)

6. Along the public ways, through altars smoking with incense, he led his prisoners.

7. Turning his chariot away from the Forum toward the Capitol, he ordered the captive kings and leaders of the enemy to be led to the prison and there put to death. (286, 9; 206.)

8. After offering a prayer to Jupiter and the other great gods, Mars, Apollo, Neptune, Mercury, and Vulcan, he invited his friends and the chief men of the city to a feast in the Capitol. (286, 9 and 12.)

9. The inviting of the consuls was a mere form, because a little while after this he asked them not to come. (289, 1; 206.)

10. Prompted by jealousy, he did this so that no one superior to himself might be present. (268.)
11. The celebrating of a triumph might last more than a day; (that) of Paulus Aemilius lasted three days. (273; 92; 52.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Those who deserved were 'the deserving' (ones).
3. The sentence may be expressed as follows:
   *It was allowed to (him) saved to present this crown to him who had saved (him), or, it was allowed (to him) saved to present him (accusative) who had saved him with this crown.*
5. To have a better view of him is 'to see him more plainly.'
8. To invite them to a feast in the Capitol is 'to invite them to come to the Capitol to a feast, or for the purpose of feasting.'
9. *A mere form* is 'in name only.'
10. Prompted by = on account of. Do not forget that *né quis* expresses *that no one* in a purpose clause.

EXERCISE 45

1. For many years the pirates had had fleets scattered over the whole sea. (52, 291.)
2. The Romans were unable to keep them from entering even a much frequented harbor, although it was under the very eyes of a Roman consul. (275; 74.)
3. This state of affairs became intolerable.
4. At this time Aulus Gabinius brought forward a bill proposing the appointment of one man of consular rank to have supreme power over the whole sea for a period of three years.
5. Notwithstanding the opposition of Catulus, Hortensius, and other eminent men, the bill was passed. (74.)
6. Pompey soon had a large army collected. (291.)
7. Hastening first to Sicily, then to Sardinia, then to Africa, he personally attended to the fortifying of these three granaries of Rome. (286, 9; 128; 198.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Over the whole sea: per tōtum mare.
2. Although it was under the very eyes of a Roman consul is equivalent to ‘while a Roman consul was looking on’ (inspectāre, to look on).
3. Anything that is intolerable is ‘not to be borne.’ (290.)
4. Rearrange thus: at this time Aulus Gabinius proposed (prōmulgāre) a law for (dē) the appointing (290) of one of consular rank to have command (206) for three years (52) of the sea.
5. Catulus, Hortensius, and others opposing (reclāmāre). (74.)
6. Express first by primum, then by deinde, then by tum.

Exercise 46

1. The defense of the rest of the ports he left to his lieutenants although it was attended with great danger.
2. Now he was well prepared to pursue the pirates.
3. So rapid was his pursuit that within forty days he conquered and drove them from the part of the sea near Spain.
4. He thus made it possible for a Roman to reach Spain without any danger. (213.)
5. On his return to Italy he learned that the pirates had been seen near Brundisium. (16; 183, 2.)
6. The danger arising from this quarter had to be averted, and everything depended upon prompt action. (286, 7.)
7. He therefore started at once for Brundisium. (58.)
8. Within forty-nine days after leaving this city he had forced the pirates to the coast of Cilicia. (286, 12.)

9. The sinking of the ships of the pirates and the capturing of their crews restored safety to the Romans although they scarcely hoped for it. (289, 1.)

10. To Pompey is to be given the credit of preparing for, beginning, and finishing the war within three months.

SUGGESTIONS

1. Arrange thus: with great danger to his lieutenants he gave (tradere) the defense of the rest of the ports. (198.)

3. So rapid was his pursuit = he pursued them so rapidly. (214.) Express the word conquered by the perfect participle: he drove the conquered.

4. To make it possible for one to reach is ‘to bring it about (efficere) so that he may be able to come through to.’

6. The danger was to be averted (gerundive) and all things in acting (agendō) quickly were placed.

8. Use the ordinal adjective: on the forty-ninth day. (78.)

9. The present participle in agreement with Rōmānīs will translate the clause, although they scarcely (vix) hoped for it.

10. To Pompey the credit (decus) for the war (genitive) prepared for, begun, and within three months finished, is to be given (tribuendum).

ADVERBS

292. Nōn, not, the negative in most common use, is found both with words and sentences:

Nōn scholae, sed vītae discimus, it is not for school, but for life, that we are learning.

Nōn intellegunt hominēs quam magnum vectigal sit parsi-
mōnia, men do not realize how great a revenue economy furnishes.

293. Haud, not, is often used with adjectives and adverbs: Vādimus haud dubiam in mortem, we rush into not doubtful death.

Haud secus ac iussī faciunt, they do not otherwise than ordered.

294. Nē, not, is used to negative a hortative subjunctive. Remember that this form is present, first plural, and is translated by the English word let:

Nē dēspērēmus honōrēs, let us not despair of office.

295. Nē, not, is used to negative a jussive subjunctive. Observe that this subjunctive is usually in the third person, and is translated by the English word let:

Nē patiantur dēsideriō sui Catilinam miserum tābēscere, let them not allow poor Catiline to waste away because of his longing for them.

296. Nē, not, is commonly used to negative an optative subjunctive. This is the subjunctive expressing a wish:

Utinam rēs nē crēdita fuisset! would that the report had not been believed!

297. Nē, not, is used to negative a purpose clause:

Monuit nē proelium committeret, he advised him not to begin battle.

298. The position of the adverb nōn, when used with nēmō, nihil, nūlli, numquam, etc., will determine the meaning:

nōn nēmō, some one. nēmō nōn, everybody.
nōn nihil, somewhat. nihil nōn, everything.
nōn nūlli, some people. nūlli nōn, all.
nōn numquam, sometimes. numquam nōn, always.
Erat nōn nēmō in senātū qui diceret, there was some one in the senate who said.

Nēmō nōn dixit, everybody said (there was no one who did not say).

Sabinus nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carpēbātur, Sabinus was somewhat censured by our soldiers.

Nihil nōn perfécit, he finished everything (there was nothing that he did not finish).

Esse nōn nūllōs qui plūs possint quam magistrātūs, (Liscus says) that there are some people who have more influence than the magistrates have.

Nūlli nōn vēnērunt, all came (there were none who did not come).

Nōn numquam interdiū, saepeius noctū, perrumpere conāti sunt, sometimes by day, more often by night, they tried to force their way.

Malefacere qui vult numquam nōn causam invenit, one who would do wrong always finds a pretext.

299. Nihil, *nothing*, is sometimes used instead of nōn. (Nihil is then an adverbial accusative.)

Hi nihil Caesāris imperium exspectābant, these did not wait for orders from Caesar.

300. English adverbs are often expressed by Latin nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.:

He was naturally cruel, nātūrā saevus erat.

They came unwillingly, invīti vēnērunt.

This is usually the case, hoc fere sic fierī solet.

301. Latin adverbs may often be translated by English nouns, adjectives, etc.:

Hominēs nihil agendō discunt male agere, by having nothing to do, men learn to do evil.
Fortiter ferendō saepe vincitur malum, it often happens that misfortune is overcome by brave endurance.

302. In English, we use such expressions as 'And one cannot tell,' 'And one never knows'; in Latin, however, show the negation early in the sentence:

Neque quisquam potest dicere, and not any one can tell (and no one can tell).

Neque quicquam aliud adsecūtī sunt, and they accomplished not anything else (and they accomplished nothing else).

In this connection, notice that the verb negō appears early in a sentence:

Negat sē posse iter ûllī per prōvinciam dare, he says that he cannot allow any one the right of way through the province.

303. Distinguish between prīnum and prīmō. Usually prīmō means at first; prīnum, for the first time:

Fāma parva metū prīmō, gossip is little at first because of her fear.

Hic prīnum tēlis nostrōrum obbruimur, here for the first time, we are overpowered by the weapons used by our friends.

304. In a series, prīnum or prīmō is used to mean first; deinde, then, secondly; tum, then, thirdly; dēnique, postrēmō, lastly:

Prīnum mihi vidētur dē genere bellī, deinde dē magnitūdine, tum dē imperātōre deligendō esse dicendum, it seems proper for me to speak first about the character of the war, then about its importance, thirdly about the choice of a commander for this war.
305. Not even is expressed in Latin by nē . . . quidem; the emphatic words are placed between nē and quidem: Nē ūnum quidem impetum sustinēre poterant, not even one attack could they withstand.

PREPOSITIONS

306. Time, place, cause, manner, source, accompaniment, and other relations may be shown in Latin by the use of a preposition with its case. Again, the case alone may express the thought.

307. In English we often use two prepositions with the same word; as a rule avoid this in Latin:

Vel vōbiscum vel sine vōbis itūri sunt, either with or without you they intend to go.

308. One preposition may be used with more than one object if the objects are closely connected in thought:

Ab Sēquanis Haeduisque lēgāti veniēbant, ambassadors kept coming from the Sequanians and the Haedui.

309. The same preposition may be repeated with two or more nouns:

Magnus in bellō et in pāce fuit, distinguished was he in both war and peace.

310. As a rule prepositions precede the words which they govern. Among the exceptions note carefully:

Mēcum, with me; nōbiscum, with us; tēcum, with you; vōbiscum, with you; sēcum, with himself, herself, itself, themselves; quōcum, quibuscum, with whom.

311. Pay careful attention to the translation of English prepositions. The Latin for these must be determined by the thought, not the word, to be expressed.
Some of the translations of a few English prepositions may be understood from the following phrases and sentences:

312. Of

From the founding of the city, ab urbe condita (a. u. c.). H (636, 4); LM 1013; AG 292, a; G 325, Rem. 3; B 337, 5.

Top of the mountain, summus mōns.
H (497, 4); LM 565; AG 193; G 291, Rem. 2; B 241.

What is the price of corn? quanti frumentum est?
H (448, 1); LM 576; AG 252, a; G 380; B 203, 3.

They despair of office, honōrēs dēspērant.
H (405, 1, note); LM 502; AG 237, b; G 330, Rem.; B 175, 2, b.

They wish to deprive him of life, vitā eum privāre volunt.
H (462); LM 601; AG 243, a; G 390, 2; B. 214, 1, a.

I shall inform you of the fact, dē rē tē certiōrem faciam.
A man of great valor, vir summā virtūte.
H (473, 2); LM 643; AG 251; G 400; B 224.

There is but one in command of all the Druids, his omni-

bus Druidibus praeest ūnus.
H (429); LM 532; AG 228; G 347; B 187, III.

One of his sons was captured, ūnus ex filiīs captus est.
H (444); LM 563; AG 216, 4, c; G 372, Rem. 2; B 201, 1, a.

Cups of gold, aurea pōcula.

Cups of gold, pōcula facta ex aurō.
H (467); LM 610; AG 244, e; G 396.

Cups of gold, pōcula plēna auri or aurō.
H (477, II, 2); LM 573; AG 218, a; G 374; B 204.

He was the son of a goddess, nātus deā erat.
H (469, 2); LM 609; AG 244, 2, a; G 395; B 215.
They are of German descent, ortī ab Germānīs sunt.
H (469, 1); LM 609; AG 244, 2, a, Rem.; G 395; B 215, 2.

313.
To (INTO)
He came to Rome, Rōmam vēnit.
He came to our house, domum nostram vēnit.
He came to our house, in domum nostram vēnit.
They are moving back into the large house, in magnam domum remigrant.
H (418, 419); LM 515, 520; AG 258, b, note 1; G 337, Rem. 3; B 182, note.
What difference does it make to you or to the general? quid id rēfert tuā aut imperātōris?
H (449, 1); LM 579, 580; AG 222, a; G 381, 382; B 211, 1, a.
The way to Brundisium is not very long, iter Brundisīnum (adjective) nōn est longissīnum.
The passage to Britain was difficult, trānsitus in Britanniam erat difficilis.
Āversus ā vērō esse vidētur, he seems to be opposed to the truth.
H (462, 1); LM 600; AG 243; G 390; B 214.
Such is the road to success, sīc itur ad astra.
Proximī sunt Germānīs, they are next to the Germans.
H (434, 1, 2); LM 536; AG 234, a; G 359; B 192, 1.
Proximī Rhēnum incolunt, they live next to the Rhine.
H (420, 5); LM 1201; AG 234, e; G 359, 3, note; B 141, 3.

314.
For
He asks the reason for your coming, rogat cūr veniās (vēneris).
Man is born for understanding and acting, homō ad intellegendum et ad agendum est nātus.
He kept dunning them for money, pecūniam eōs flagitābat.

Sui cōnservandi causā profūgerunt, they fled for the sake of saving themselves.

Now is the time for play, tempus est lūndendi.

They have been in Italy for years, multōs annōs in Itāliā fuērunt.

He sold his country for gold, aurō patriam vēndidit.

A mother’s love for her son, mātris amor fili.

I must live with them or die for them, mihi aut cum hīs vivendum aut prō hīs est moriendum.

It will be dangerous for you to go, periculōsum erit vōs ire. (190.)

He could not speak for his tears, prae lacrimīs loqui nōn poterat. (Prae is used here to express a cause, and this use occurs in negative clauses only.)

An entrance is made by force, fit via vī.

They took the money by force, per vim pecūniā potīti sunt. They marched by the building, praeter aedificium iter fēcērunt.
The facts were announced by the scouts, *eae rēs ab explōrātōribus (per explōrātōrēs) nūntiātae sunt.*

They came to our city by the hundred, *centēnī ad nostram urbem vēnērunt.*

Their number increases day by day (daily), *eōrum numerus crēscit in diēs (in singulōs diēs).*

Sometimes by day, more often by night, they tried to force their way, *nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, per-rumpere cōnātī sunt.*

He tried to find it out by letter, *per litterās eam rem petere cōnātus est.*

He accomplished that by himself, *per sē eam rem perfēcit.*

They decided to go by themselves, *sōlī ōre cōnstituē-runt.*

There was an old bay tree near by, *fuit iūxtā veterrima laurus.*

The wall was struck by lightning, *mūrus dē caelo tāctus est.*

The general by delaying conquered the enemy, *dux morā-tus hostēs vīcit.*

316.

**With**

He was struck violently with a sword, *gladiō vi percussus est.*

There he stood with his sword on, *stābat cum gladiō.*

They wrote with care (carefully), *magnā cum cūrā scribē-bant.*

It is all over with us, *āctum est dē nōbis.*

I do not agree with you, *dissentīō ā tē.*

The effect ceases with the cause, *cessante causā, cessat effectus.*

Some started with us, others with him, *alii nōbiscum, alii cum eō profectī sunt.*
He says that they fought with him, *dicit eōs sēcum pugnāvisse.*

He marched into Gaul with an army, *ipse cum exercitū in Galliam iter fēcit.*

He started with five hundred soldiers, *ipse cum quīngentīs mīlitibus profectus est.*

He started with many soldiers, *multīs mīlitibus profectus est.*

It was with great danger that they crossed the bridge, *magnō cum periculō trāns pontem trānsiērunt.*

After the war with the Helvetians the rest of the Gauls came to congratulate Caesar, *bello Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, reliqui Gallī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt.*

317. **Without**

*Sine causā in eōs impetum fēcērunt,* they attacked them without cause.

He crossed the river without any danger, *sine ūllō periculō trāns flūmen trānsiit.*

He crossed the river without any opposition, *nūllō impediente,* *trāns flūmen trānsiit.*

They came without an invitation, *nōn invītātī vēnērunt.*

They came without its being known, *occultē vēnērunt.*

They came without our consent, *nōbīs invītīs,* *vēnērunt.*

I cannot leave without saying this, *nōn possum abīre neque haec dīcō.*

He could not answer without knowing, *is, cum nōn intellegēret,* *respondēre nōn poterat.*

Remember these words, *‘not a day without a line,’ memoria tenē,* *‘nūlla diēs sine lineā.’*

I did not allow a single day to pass without writing some kind of a letter to you, *nūllum diem intermīsi quīn aliquid ad tē litterārum darem.*
318. From

In war great results arise from slight causes, in bellō parvis momentis magnī causīs intercēdunt.
They came from the city, ab urbe vēnērunt.
They came from Rome, Rōmā vēnērunt.
They came from the city, Rome, ab urbe Rōmā vēnērunt.
They came from home, domō vēnērunt.
From one o'clock until evening they fought, ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum est.
He fears unpopularity arising from negligence, invidiam nēquitiae pertimēscit.
Rome was a monarchy from the founding of the city until its liberation, rēgnātum est Rōmae ab urbe conditā ad liberātām.

319. In

He spent the winter in a town in Gaul, in Galliae oppidō hiemābat.
In my opinion he ought to have a share in the general’s glory, meā quidem sententiā exprēs esse nōn dēbet glōriāe eius imperātōris.
You were chosen in his stead, illius locō délēctus es.
He died in his twentieth year, vīcēsimō annō aetātis suae mortuus est.
Why are they so particular in the case of this general? cūr sunt tam dīligentēs in hōc imperātōre?
It was done in good faith, bonā fīdē factum est.
He was a soldier in name, not in fact, miles nōn rē sed nōmine erat.
He began to speak in the presence of the general, cōram imperātōrem fāri coepit.
He called out in the presence of his army, exercitū suō praesente, conclāmāvit.
He has confidence in the soldier, milite confidit.
I pass over many things in silence, multa taceō.
He fought fearlessly in the midst of the enemy, fortiter inter hostēs pugnābat.
In alarm they fled, trepidi fugiēbant.
He was distinguished in war and in peace, magnus in bellō et in pāce erat.
In conclusion let us say this, postrēmō haec dīcāmus.
Vel pāce vel bellō clārum fieri licet, one may be distinguished either in peace or war.

320. On

They started on the first of October, ad Kalendās Octō-brēs (Kalendīs Octōbrībus) profectī sunt.
No one could stand on the wall, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūlli.
They began to throw stones on the wall, in mūrum lapidēs iacere coepērunt.
The stones are lying on the ground, humī lapidēs iacent.
They fought on land and sea, terrā marīque pugnātum est.
The auxiliaries were on the left, ab sinistrā auxilia cōnsitērunt.
She asked for what they wore on their left hands, illa petiit quod in sinistris manibus gererent.
They made an attack on them on the march, ex itinere in eōs impetum fēcērunt.
That was a report on hearsay, dictum est dē dictō.
He asks many favors on the ground of acquaintance, is, quod tē nōvit, multa petit.
Cicero says that he is always on hand, Cicero dicit sē semper adesse.
They say that everything has been done with the greatest care on their part, dicunt omnia suā summā cūrā facta esse.
On the coming of Caesar the enemy surrendered, *hostēs postquam Caesar vēnit sē dēdidērunt.*
They live on milk and eggs, *lacte et ōvis vivunt.*
On the arrival of the news the army broke camp, *postquam nūntiātum est exercitus castra mōvit.*
A part was on this side of the river, *pars citrā flūmen erat.*
Some were on the side of the Romans, others, the Germans, *alii Rōmānōrum, alii Germānōrum erant.*

321. **Out**

Out of sight, out of mind, *absēns hēres nōn erit.*
Out of respect to Diviciacus Caesar pardoned Dumnorix, *Caesar Diviciācī honōris causā Dumnorigī ignōvit.*
What can you make out of such a boy? *quid hōc puerō faciās?*
He can look out for his own interests, *sibi cōnsulere potest.*
He is never out of debt, *numquam aere aliēnō solūtus est.*

322. **Under**

Under the leadership of the gods the victory was won, *dis immortālibus ducibus, vicērunt.*
Under these circumstances they ought to erect a temple in honor of the gods.

*Quae cum ita sint*  
*Cum ea ita sint*  
*Ob eās rēs*

*iis deōrum honōris causā templum pōnendum est.*
They made the army pass under the yoke, *fēcērunt ut exercitus sub iugum mitterētur.*
The book is under the desk, *liber est sub mēnsā.*
They could not hold office under our government, *imperium nostrum imperare non poterant.*

Under no circumstances could this be arranged, *pacto nullo poterat fieri.*

He escaped under cover of night, *in noctem se coniecit.*

**COORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS**

323. Words and clauses in the same construction are usually joined by coordinate conjunctions.

324. *Et,* *and,* is the most common Latin connective for either words or sentences:

*Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori,* it is sweet and glorious to die for one’s country.

*Omnia mutantur nos et mutamur in illis,* all things are subject to change, and we change with them.

325. In many cases, *et* will express more than the English *and:* 

*Et haec diximus,* and we said this besides.

*Multa quoque et bellò passus,* many things also he suffered in war too.

326. *-que,* *and,* shows a closer connection than *et,* and is usually joined to the second of two words to be connected, or to a modifier of the second word:

*Senatus populusque Rōmānus (S. P. Q. R.),* the Senate and the Roman people.

*Reperiēbat nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum īnferri,* he found that they allowed no wine and other things to be brought into their country.

327. When *-que* connects two clauses, it is usually joined to the first word of the second clause, unless the
first word is a preposition (-que may be joined to any monosyllabic preposition except ob and sub):

Caesar loquendi finem fecit seque ad suos recepit, Caesar brought the interview to an end and betook himself to his own men.

Respondet ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri inque eam rem suam fidem interponere, his answer is, surely no harm shall come to him, and to this he pledges himself.

328. Atque (ac), and, and also, is used to connect words and sentences, the second of which is more important than the first. Atque is used before either vowels or consonants; ac, before consonants. When atque (ac) connects sentences, it usually stands first in the sentence:

Rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus est, he was called king and also friend by the senate.

Hoc habe in memoriam atque pectore, keep this in your mind and thoughts.

Atque ille eo tempore paruit, and at that time he obeyed. Veritatis absolutus sermo ac semper est simplex, the language of truth is unadorned and is always simple.

Ac ne illud quidem vobis neglegendum est, and you must neglect not even that.

329. Neque (nec), and not, is the negative of et. Et non, and not, may be used to negative a word:

Inermis sum, neque quicquam habeo praeter hanc tubam, I am unarmed, and I have nothing except this trumpet.

Ille se Massiliam non in haec castra conferet, he will go to Massilia, not to this camp.

330. Etiam, still, even, yet, also, and further, what is more, etc., usually adds force to the word which it precedes:
Prōditōrēs etiam iīs quōs antepōnunt invisī sunt, traitors are despised even by those whom they help.

331. Quoque, also, too, additional, as well, etc., adds emphasis to the word that it follows:
Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asylum aperuistis? why did you not open a place of refuge for women also?

332. Aut, or, is used when one alternative absolutely excludes the other:
Vinceris aut vincis, you are being conquered or you are conquering.
Aut . . . aut, either . . . or:
Aut exeant aut quiescant, let them either go out or keep still.

333. Vel, or (from volō, I wish), may be used when the choice depends upon the person:
Cessit auctōritātī, vel potius pāruit, he submitted to authority, or rather, he obeyed.

334. Vel . . . vel, either . . . or:
Allobrogibus sēse vel persuāsūrōs existimābant vel vi coāctūrōs, they thought that they could either persuade the Allobroges or force them.

335. Sive (seu), or, if you choose, may suggest a choice of two names for the same object:
Mare Tyrrhēnum sive īnferum, the Tuscan or lower sea.

336. Sive . . . sive, whether . . . or:
Sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium Tigurīnī poenās persolvērunt, whether by chance or by the will of the gods, the Tigurini paid the penalty.
337. *Sed, but, however:*

Non réfert quam multós librós sed quam bonós habeat, it makes no difference how many books one has, but how good they are.

338. *Verum, but, truly, it is true, really, etc., is stronger than sed, and stands first in a sentence:*

Verum tamen illis imperatóribus laus est tribuenda quod égérunt, but for all that, praise must be given to those commanders for what they have done.

339. *Véro, but indeed, in fact, no doubt, of course, etc., is usually placed second in a sentence:*

Hic vérō ingentem pugnam cernimus, but here indeed we see a great battle.

340. *Autem, but, furthermore, on the other hand, etc., is usually placed second in a sentence:*

Ego autem nōminō nēminem, but I mention no names.

341. *At, but, at least, on the contrary, etc.:*

At enim 'nē quid novī fiat,' but (some object) for they are opposed to innovations (they say).

342. *Tamen, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless, after all, for all that, in spite of that fact, etc., is usually first in a sentence, but if it emphasizes a word, it follows that word:*

Tamen légātīs respondit, notwithstanding, he replied to the ambassadors.

Sēsē tamen existimātiōne vulgī commovērī, saying that he, in spite of that fact, was influenced by public opinion.

343. *Non modo . . . sed étiam, not only . . . but also, but even.*
Non modo . . . verum etiam, not only . . . but also.
Non solum . . . verum etiam, not only . . . but also.
(This is not the only thing; something more is to follow.)
Cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, on the one hand . . . on the other, while . . . at the same time.
Non modo post civitatem datam sed etiam post légem Pápiam, not only after the granting of citizenship, but even after the Papian law.
Quí libri nón modo Lúcullum, verum etiam populi Rómáni nómen inlústrant, these works make not only Lucullus but also the name of the Roman people famous.
Populi Rómáni glória cum magna in omnibus rébus tum summa in ré militári trádita est, the glory of the Roman people not only great in all things, but also greatest in military matters, has been handed down.

344. Enim, for, really, indeed, in fact, well, etc., is usually found in the second or third place in a sentence:
Nón enim hoc sine causá quaerí vidéitur, for really this seems to be a sensible question.
Núlla est enim nátió quam pertíměscámus, for there is no nation which we have to fear.

345. Etenim, for, and indeed, in truth, since, etc., is placed first in a sentence:
Etenim iam diú in his periculís versámur, for we have been living for a long time in the midst of these dangers.

346. Neque enim is the negative of etenim:
Neque enim tibi haec réś adfert dolórem, for, undoubtedly, such a course as this does not trouble you.
347. Nam, for, for surely, but now, for it is evident, etc., takes the first place in a sentence:

Nam propter frigora frumenta matura non erant, for, on account of the cold seasons, the grain was not ripe.

348. Namque, for, for indeed, for, you know, etc., is stronger than nam:

Namque omnium rerum quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, for indeed the greatest abundance of all things which were indispensable in war was in this town.

349. Ergō, therefore, now, accordingly, then, well then, consequently, etc., has first place in a sentence or follows an important word:

Ergō illum maiōrēs nostri in civitātem recēpērunt, therefore our ancestors made him a citizen.

350. Itaque, and so, therefore, is usually placed first in a sentence:

Itaque rem suscipit, and so he undertakes the mission.

351. Igitur, therefore, you see, so then, as I was saying, pursuing this course, etc., usually takes the second or third place in a sentence (Sallust places igitur first):

Fuisti iigitur apud Laecam, you were, as I was saying, at Laeca’s.

352. Observe the following:

Scientiam rei militāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlicitātem. (In this, the coordinate conjunction is omitted.)

Diligentiam et iūstitiam et cōmitātem, et fidem. (Note the use of et.)

Bona, fōrtūnās, coniugēs, līberōsque. (Note the use of -que to connect the last two words.)
DATES

353. The Romans divided their year into twelve months, the names of which are adjectives:

Iānuārius a um
Februārius a um
Mārtius a um
Aprilis is e
Māius a um
Iūnius a um
Quintīlis \{ is e (so-called before 46 B.C.)
Iūlius \} a um
Sextīlis \} is e (so-called before 46 B.C.)
Augustus a um

September Septembris Septembre
Octōber Octōbris Octōbre
November Novembris Novembre
December Decembris Decembre

354. The names given to the three days of the month from which the Romans reckon the date are, Kalendae, Nōnae, and Īdūs.

We often say "so many days until the first of the month," "so many days before a certain time"; a Roman always said "so many days before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides."

355. The first day of the month was called Kalendae, the Kalends:

"In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides."
356. Remember that the Romans count the day from which and the day to which they reckon, and that a date is very often expressed by the prepositional phrase ante diem with an ordinal and accusative.

357. If a date falls between the Kalends and Nones, add one to the date on which the Nones fall, and from this sum subtract the given date. For example:

July 4 comes between July 1 and July 7 \((7 + 1 - 4 = 4)\), therefore the Latin will be ante diem quartum Nonâs Quintilès or Iûliâs.

358. If a date falls between the Nones and Ides, add one to the date on which the Ides fall, and subtract the given date. For example:

June 10 falls between June 5 and June 13 \((13 + 1 - 10 = 4)\), hence this will be expressed by the Latin, ante diem quartum Idús Iûniâs.

359. If a date comes after the Ides of a month, add two to the number of days in that month and subtract the given date. For example:

December 25 is after December 13 \((31 + 2 - 25 = 8)\), hence the Latin will be ante diem octavum Kalendâs Iânu-âriâs.

360. If a date comes immediately before the Kalendae, Nônae, or Îdus, show this, as a rule, by the use of pridie with the accusative:

Pridië Kalendâs Iânuâriâs, December 31.
Pridië Îdus Decembrês, December 12.
Pridië Nônâs Decembrês, December 4.

361. If a date falls on the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, show this by using the ablative without a preposition or the accusative with ad:
Kalendis Iūniīs} \{ June 1. \] \( \text{ustain ad Kalendās Iūnīās} \} \{ April 5. \]
\[ \text{ad Nōnās Aprilīs} \] \[ \text{Idibus Martiis} \] \{ March 15. \]

362. To express the year add or subtract, as may be required, the given date from 753 b.c., the time of the founding of Rome:

14 A.D. = 767 A.U.C.
Rome was founded April 21, 753 B.C.

Exercise 47

1. Marcus Tullius Cicero was born January 3, 106 B.C., near Arpinum. (357.)
2. On the first of January, 63 B.C., he became consul. (361.)
3. A formal decree of banishment was published against him, April 3, 58 B.C. (357.)
4. The senate recalled him August 4, 57 B.C. (360.)
5. On the last day of July, 51 B.C., he went as pro-consul to Cilicia. (360; 62.)
6. From this place he returned January 4, 49 B.C. (360.)
7. When Caesar and Pompey were fighting against each other, Cicero remained with Pompey until the battle of Pharsalus, August 9, 48 B.C. (358.)
8. On the thirtieth of November he returned to Brundisium. (360.)
9. Here he remained until August 1, 47 B.C., when he was informed by a letter from Caesar that he had no reason to fear. (361; 50, 2.)
10. Freed from his fearful anxiety, he returned to Rome, September 22, 47 B.C. (97; 359.)
Exercise 48

Besides the works of Cicero which are best known to us are his Fourteen Philippics, or Speeches against Antony, delivered before the senate on about the following dates:

- September 2, 44 B.C.
- September 19, 44 B.C.
- November 20, 44 B.C.
- December 20, 44 B.C.
- January 1, 43 B.C.
- January 4, 43 B.C.
- January 31, 43 B.C.
- February 12, 43 B.C.
- March 3, 43 B.C.
- March 8, 43 B.C.
- March 22, 43 B.C.
- April 1, 43 B.C.
- April 22, 43 B.C.


Indirect Discourse

363. Direct Discourse is a person's speech or thought quoted in his exact words.

Non ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt, it was not I who made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on me (said Ariovistus to Caesar).

364. Indirect Discourse contains, not one's exact words, but his speech or thought dependent upon a verb or expression of saying, thinking, knowing, or perceiving, either expressed or implied in the context.
Ariovistus respondit: non sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse, Ariovistus replied that it was not he who had made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on him.

365. In English, we often follow another's thoughts and state them directly, changing only the tense of the verb.

In Latin, however, changes in mode, tense, case, and person are made.

Declarative sentences of direct discourse when changed to indirect discourse require the infinitive with subject accusative in the principal clauses; the subjunctive, in the subordinate clauses.

(Direct.) Ex illā diē quā in potestātem Āfrōrum vēni, Rōmānus esse dēsīi, from the day on which I fell into the power of the Africans, I ceased to be a Roman.

(Indirect.) Regulus dixit sē ex illā diē quā in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnisset Rōmānum esse dēsisse, Regulus said that from the day on which he fell into the power of the Africans, he had ceased to be a Roman.

366. Observe that a writer sometimes uses the indicative in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, when he wishes to state a fact.

Sē tanti nōn esse ut tot milia captīvōrum propter ūnum sē et senem et paucōs qui ex Rōmānis captī fuerant reddentur, saying that he was not of so much importance that so many thousands of prisoners should be returned in exchange for one, an old man too, and the few Romans who had been taken prisoners.

367. Interrogative sentences of direct discourse when changed to indirect discourse require the subjunctive.

(Direct.) Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meās possessīōnēs vēnis? what do you mean? why do you come into my lands?
(Indirect.) Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? in reply to Caesar’s demands, Ariovistus had little to say, but about his own virtues he did much boasting. What did he mean? Why did he come into his lands?

368. Do not forget that declarative sentences may take the form of a question implying a negative answer, and are called rhetorical questions.

In direct discourse, rhetorical questions are used in both indicative and subjunctive.

Quid est quod tē dēlectāre possit? what is there that can please you? (Nothing.)

Quis nōn eam victoriam probet? who would not approve of such a victory? (There is no one who would not approve.)

369. Rhetorical questions of the direct discourse when changed to the indirect discourse are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative, when they are first or third person; by the subjunctive, when second person.

(Direct.) Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci volō, num recentium iniūriārum memoriam deponere possum? but if I am willing to forget the old insult, can I forget the late wrongs?

(Indirect.) His Caesar respondit: Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet num recentium iniūriārum memoriam deponere posse? Caesar replied as follows: If he were willing to forget the old insult, could he forget the late wrongs?

Rhetorical questions which are in the subjunctive in direct discourse keep the subjunctive in indirect discourse.
(Direct.) *Cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet?* why should any one think that he would forget his obligations to us?

(Indirect.) *Eōs incūsāvit: Cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret,* he censured them, saying, Why should any one think that Ariovistus could forget his obligations to the Romans?

370. Note the changes in pronouns shown in the following sentences of direct and indirect discourse.

(Direct.) *Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt,* it was not I who made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on me.

(Indirect.) *Ariovistus respondit: nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulissee,* Ariovistus replied that it was not he who had made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on him.

(Direct.) *Trānsī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte,* it was not on my own account that I crossed the Rhine.

(Indirect.) *Ariovistus respondit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,* Ariovistus replied that it was not on his own account that he had crossed the Rhine.

371. Imperative sentences of direct discourse become subjunctive in indirect discourse and are expressed sometimes with *ut,* more often without *ut,* if affirmative; with *nē,* if negative.

(Direct.) *Reminiscerē prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,* remember the former valor of the Helvetians.

(Indirect.) *Dixit, reminiscerētur prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,* remember, he said, the former valor of the Helvetians.

(Direct.) *Nōlite iuvāre eōs frūmentō,* do not assist them with grain.

(Indirect.) *Litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō iuvārent,* he sent orders for them not to assist them with grain.
372. The perfect infinitive of indirect discourse may represent the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative of the direct discourse.

Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra móvisse, Caesar learned that the Helvetians were breaking camp, did break camp, or had broken camp.

373. When a conditional sentence is changed from direct to indirect discourse, the protasis or condition, since this is a subordinate clause, is expressed by the subjunctive. The tense usually follows the law of sequence of tenses, but often in long speeches the time refers to the time of the speaker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT</th>
<th>INDIRECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Si pugnant, vincunt</td>
<td>Dicit si pugment, eōs vincere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dixit si pugnārent, eōs vincere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si pugnābant, vincēbant</td>
<td>Dicit si pugnārent eōs vicisse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dixit si pugnārent eōs vicisse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si pugnābunt, vincent</td>
<td>Dicit si pugnet eōs victūrōs esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dixit si pugnārent eōs victūrōs esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si pugnāverint, vincent</td>
<td>Dicit si pugnāverint eōs victūrōs esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dixit si pugnāvissent eōs victūrōs esse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

374. Keep in mind the fact that the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse when changed to indirect discourse becomes perfect subjunctive after a principal tense, pluperfect after a historical tense.

(Direct.) Id fierī poterit, si suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum introdūixerint, this can be done, if the Haeduī will lead (will have led) their forces into the territory of the Bellovaci.
(Indirect.) Docet id fieri posse si suas cópiás Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum introductūrerint, he shows that this can be done, if the Haedui lead their forces into the territory of the Bellovaci.

(Direct.) Si discesseris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābō, if you withdraw (will have withdrawn), I shall reward you handsomely.

(Indirect.) Ariovistus respondit: Si discessisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, Ariovistus replied that he would reward Caesar handsomely, if he would withdraw.

375. In changing contrary to fact conditions from direct to indirect discourse, remember that the protasis or condition remains unchanged, whether after a principal or historical tense.

Note the changes to be made in the apodosis or conclusion of contrary to fact conditions, when these are changed from direct to indirect discourse.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT</th>
<th>INDIRECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect subjunctive active becomes Future infinitive active.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect subjunctive passive becomes {Futūrum esse} ut, with the imperfect subjunctive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect subjunctive active becomes Infinitive in-ūrus fuisset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect subjunctive passive becomes {Futūrum fuisset ut with the imperfect subjunctive.}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Direct.) Si hoc optimum factū iūdicārēs, in castra exercitum dūcerēs, if you thought it the best thing to do, you would lead the army into camp.

(Indirect.) Dicō {Dixi} si hoc optimum factū iūdicārēs, in castra tē exercitum ductūrum esse.
(Direct.) Sapientia non expeteretur si nihil efficeret, wisdom would not be so eagerly sought for, if it amounted to nothing.

(Indirect.) \[ \text{Dico} \] futūrum esse (fore) ut sapientia non ex-

(Indirect.) \[ \text{Dixi} \] pteretur si nihil efficeret.

(Direct.) Si Catilīna remānsisset urbem nōn liberāsseμus, if Catiline had stayed, we could not have freed the city.

(Indirect.) \[ \text{Dico} \] si Catilīna remānsisset, nōs urbem nōn liberatūrōs fuisse.

(Direct.) Si Catilīna remānsisset, a nōbīs urbs nōn liberāta fuisset, if Catiline had stayed, the city could not have been freed by us.

(Indirect.) \[ \text{Dico} \] si Catilīna remānsisset, futūrum fuisse ut a nōbīs urbs nōn liberārētur.

376. Remember that in a past contrary to fact condi-
tional sentence made to depend upon dubitō, doubt, the quīn clause will be the apodosis; when this is in the active voice, express it by the perfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (-ūrus fuerim).

Potest quisquam dubitāre quīn, sī in Āfricā fuisset, tībi prōvinciam trāditūrus fuerit, can any one doubt that if he had been in Africa, he would have delivered the province to you?

**Exercise 49**

It is said that a certain woman called Amalthea, a for-
eigner, came to Tarquinius Superbus to sell nine books: but on Tarquin’s refusal to give her the price which she asked, she went away and burned three of the books.
Soon after, she returned and demanded the same price for the remaining six books. What did she mean? Why did she bring those books?

After the king had ridiculed her and called her a foolish old woman, she burned three others, in his presence.

Surprised to see this, Tarquin asked the augurs what was the best thing to do.

They advised the king to give her the price which she had demanded.

References: 287; 206; 197; 60; 74; 189; 167; 205.

Exercise 50

It is said that when Amalthea had delivered the books and had advised the king to guard them carefully, she disappeared and was never afterwards seen in Rome.

Tarquin committed the care of these books, called the Sibylline books or fates, to two noblemen, ordering them to guard them faithfully, and to remember that they contained the fate of Rome and the Romans.

In public danger, they, (as) the keepers of these books, were frequently ordered to consult them.

These books, which were held sacred, were kept underground in the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. But when the Capitol was burned in the Marsic war, the Sibylline books also were destroyed.

References: 237; 206; 39; 198; 335; 331.

Exercise 51

After the burning of the Capitol ambassadors were sent in all directions to collect the oracles of the Sibyls. For there were other Sibyls besides the one who had come to Tarquin.
The chief of these were the Sibyl of Cumae, whom Aeneas is thought to have consulted, and the Sibyl of Erythrae, who used to give such ambiguous answers that no one seemed to understand them.

From the various Sibylline verses collected new books were made. These Augustus deposited in two gilt cases, which were placed under the statue of Apollo, in the temple of that god, on the Palatine Hill.

Before these were put into the cases, however, Augustus, fearing that the verses which had been collected could not be easily read, ordered the priests to rewrite them.

References: 206; 44; 271; 268; 274; 344; 345; 347; 348.

NAMES OF ROMANS

377. The names Romulus and Remus indicate that at first a Roman had but one name; Numa Pompilius and the names of the other kings show that later a Roman had two names; the name Gaius Iulius Caesar shows that still later three names were used. This was the case when they were divided into various clans (gentes), and each clan into several families (familiae).

378. The Praenomen was the first name and showed the individual. The initial, instead of the whole name, was often used. Slaves had no praenomen.

379. The Nomen showed the clan (gens), and it usually ended in ius.

380. The Cognomen showed the family (familia).

381. Sometimes, as a mark of honor, a fourth name, Agnomen, was added.
382. The Cognomen was usually derived from a certain quality of the mind; as Cato, from the adjective catus, wise; or from a certain habit; as Crassus, from the adjective crassus, fat,—the person Crassus, therefore, was slow; or from the occupation; as Piso, from pisa, a pea, because the first Piso had raised vegetables, especially pease.

383. The name Gaius Iulius Caesar shows that Gaius was one member of the Caesar family of the Julian gens.

384. Some clans seem to have had no family names; for example, the Marian gens, for we find Gaius Marius.

LETTERS

385. In formal or official correspondence, Cicero frequently uses the formula "Si valēs, bene est," usually written thus, "S. V. B. E.,” at the beginning of his letter. In his letters to Pompey, he begins in a still more formal way, “S. T. E. Q. V. B. E.,” “Si tū exercitusque valētis, bene est,” if you and your army are in good health, it is well.

386. The following is a copy of one of Cicero’s letters to his friend Atticus:

Cicerō Atticō Sal

Terentia tibi et saepe et maximās agit grātiās. Id est mihi grātissimum. Ego vivō miserrimus et maximō dolōre cōnficior. Ad tē quid scribam nesciō. Si enim es Rōmae, iam mē assequī nōn potes; sīn es in viā, cum eris mē assecūtus, cōram agēmus, quae erunt agenda. Tantum tē
órō ut, quoniam mē ipsum semper amāstī, ut eōdem amōre sīs. Ego enim īdem sum; inimīci meī mea mihi, nōn mē ipsum adēmērunt. Cūrā ut valeās.

Data VIII. Īd. Apr. Thūriīs.

387. In the above letter, we see that the name of the writer, Cicero, instead of being used as the signature as would be the case in English, appears at the beginning and in the nominative case; the name of the one, Atticus, to whom the letter is written, comes next, and is expressed by the dative.

Only with intimate friends is familiarity shown by the use of ‘Sal.,’ the abbreviated form of Salūtem.

More often, even with relatives and friends, we find S. D. (Salūtem dīcit), Cicero sends greetings or good wishes to Atticus.

We find no complimentary close, such as “Sincerely yours,” “Yours truly,” but Cūrā ut valeās, Fac valeās, and similar expressions occur. These may express the English “Keep well,” “Take care of yourself.”

388. The giving of the date seems to depend upon the mood of the writer.

Suppose a letter to be written April 10; this date may be expressed as follows:

(1) ante diem quārtum Īdus Aprilēs; (2) a. d. iv. Īd. Apr.; (3) iv. Īd. Apr.

389. The word data, or scripta, may or may not be used in connection with the date or place.

At his pleasure, the writer gives, or omits, the place from which his letter is written.
Exercise 52

The battle of Marathon was one of the most important battles in the world's history, for had the Persians been victorious, not only Athens, but the rest of Greece, would have been reduced to a Persian province. Furthermore, the nations of Europe might have been like those of Asia, not free peoples, but the slaves of their conquerors.

Both the Athenian's and the Plataeans showed great courage in the presence of the immense Persian army.

After the battle, two thousand Spartans arrived in Athens. They tried to excuse themselves for coming too late, by saying that they would have come earlier if it had been right for them to leave Sparta before the full moon.

If the Spartans had intended to help the Athenians, we cannot but think that they would have sent a much larger army. We can scarcely understand why they did not wish to save Greece.

References: 221; 223; 343; 340; 273; 58; 375; 65; 49; 89; 167.

Exercise 53

Philip of Macedon, the father of Alexander the Great, was exceedingly influential and exceptionally well versed in the art of war, which Epaminondas had taught him when he was a hostage in Thebes.

Although the Greek states differed among themselves, they were all willing to fight, when the opportunity presented itself, against the Persians whom they hated.

All Greece was astir with preparation, and plans had been formed for a joint expedition against Persia, when Philip who had been chosen their leader, was assassinated.
His son, Alexander, who was but twenty years of age, succeeded him. Well did the life of Alexander show that environment has a great deal to do with character.

Alexander used to say to his young friends: "If my father lives much longer, he will leave nothing for me to do. I am not more eager than others for glory, but I shall be glad to show what kind of a commander my father's son will be."

References: 56; 77; 259; 75; 195; 52; 16; 220; 90; 189; 169.

Exercise 54

Alexander the Great did have a chance, before he had even dared to hope for it, to show what he could do.

It is true that he never spared himself, but his marches were so difficult that neither man nor beast seemed able to stand them.

Whatever there was to be done, he usually did with great eagerness and rapidity. Soldiers felt that they were commanded by one whom nothing could resist.

By the greatest Roman generals Alexander was considered the greatest of all commanders, except Hannibal, the Carthaginian.

In courage, no man ever surpassed Alexander the Great, but when we think of him, not as a soldier, but as a man, it often seems to us that he was not great at all. If he had slaughtered his prisoners only, we could not blame him so much, for that was the custom of the times.

Shall we, however, pardon even a great general when we know that he tortured to death many noble men?

References: 167; 210; 90; 62; 368.
Exercise 55

And yet the soldiers of Alexander the Great loved him, and at his death showed even violent grief. Let us always remember that there were many instances of humanity on his part. When he destroyed Thebes, a very renowned city of Greece, he spared the house of the poet Pindar.

An eyewitness has written that before Alexander’s death, which occurred at Babylon, when he was less than thirty-two years old, the watches were compelled to open the doors to the soldiers of a hundred battles. These veterans filed sorrowfully past their dying leader.

His body was carried to Alexandria in Egypt, and an immense mausoleum was erected in his honor.

The Mausoleum at Halicarnassus was built to preserve the memory of Mausolus, king of Caria. Its erection, prompted by the love of his wife, Artemisia, has given a name for all magnificent monuments raised in honor of the dead.

References: 20; 273; 77; 365; 52; 92; 58; 39; 289; 287.

Exercise 56

In the year 219 B.C. Hannibal decided that he was well prepared to attack the Romans, and so he began his great war against them. This lasted seventeen years, and the cause of it was as follows:

On the coast of Spain there was a city called Saguntum, which was a colony belonging to the Greeks.

Saguntum was afraid of Carthage and had made a treaty with Rome, so that Rome might be more willing to protect her and might not allow any one to enter her territory without her consent.
This city Hannibal besieged, and the inhabitants withstood the attack bravely. After a siege of eight months, the chief men of the city, knowing that they could not hold out much longer, threw themselves and all their treasures into the flames of a great fire which they had made themselves for this very purpose.

So Saguntum was taken by Hannibal.

References: 52; 209; 31; 182.

Exercise 57

Because the Carthaginians had besieged Saguntum, a city of Spain, the Romans declared war against them. Hannibal did not intend to wage war on the sea, but with his army he meant to march at once into Italy, and attack the Romans in their own country.

He could not but think that the Gauls, who had lately been conquered by the Romans, would not feel friendly toward them, and would be ready and willing to join him against their conquerors.

Besides, he thought that if he should conquer the Romans in a few battles, all the peoples of Italy would have to surrender.

Things, however, happened contrary to his expectation, for the peoples of Italy not only did not surrender, but even opposed his progress at all times and in all places.

References: 12; 76; 48; 374; 275.

Exercise 58

It was by no means an easy thing for Hannibal with his army to reach Italy. For, first, he had to cross the Pyrenees Mountains in order to get out of Spain; then he
had to cross the great river Rhone, by no means an easy thing to do, because the river is very swift, and besides, the Gauls on this side of the Alps were trying to keep him from marching through their country; then he had to fight against the opposing Gauls until he reached the Alps; finally, suffering from frost and snow, he had to force his way through the dangerous places on those high mountains.

All this had to be done before he could reach Cisalpine Gaul. Often did his men have an opportunity to show their own fearlessness and their loyalty to him.

Often did both he and they realize how much depended on resolution and perseverance.

References: 205; 304; 206; 50; 275; 250; 195; 167.

Exercise 59

(It is) because there were so many difficulties (that) Hannibal’s march to Italy is famous. The Romans might have attacked him while he was in Transalpine Gaul, and if they had done so, he might not have been able to reach Italy. He marched so much faster than the Romans thought he could march, that they always arrived too late.

It was three days after Hannibal had crossed the Rhone before the Roman army arrived there, so the troops went away and waited for him in Cisalpine Gaul.

He crossed the Rhone very quickly; in two days he got together what boats were necessary to carry his soldiers across. The Gauls stationed themselves on the opposite shore to prevent the landing of his troops. For this reason he sent some of his men to cross the river at night in a place where the Gauls could not see them. With the others, at a given signal, he himself crossed the river.
The Gauls attacked them at once, but, when they heard the shouting in their rear, they were so frightened that they fled.

References: 273; 223; 183; 212; 237; 32; 275; 206; 180; 74; 210.

Exercise 60

(It was) the beginning of October (when) Hannibal's march over the Alps began, and it lasted fifteen days. Don't forget that he and his men crossed the mountains on foot. It was much more difficult to cross the Alps than the Rhone, for the barbarians were trying to keep him back; and, while he was leading his army through the narrow, dangerous paths, the enemy killed many of his men. The inhabitants kept rolling down great stones upon his troops and kept attacking them from behind, when they were not even suspecting it.

An eyewitness has written that the paths over the slippery ice broke, and many of Hannibal's soldiers fell down the steep sides of the mountain and were killed. You cannot but think that there was need of courage, and you will understand how hard a march it was, if you keep in mind the fact that, when Hannibal crossed the Rhone, he had an army of fifty-nine thousand men, and when he reached the foot of the Alps, his army consisted of scarcely twenty-six thousand men.

References: 52; 178; 181; 271; 305; 220; 167; 182; 237; 33.

Exercise 61

Caius Julius Caesar was born in Rome, July 12, 100 B.C. Had it not been for his uncle, C. Marius, he might not have
been made a priest of Jupiter when he was only fourteen years old. Then, L. Cornelius Sulla would have had him put to death, if he had not had so many influential friends. Finally, if Caesar had died at forty years of age, he would be remembered as a leading statesman, but not a famous general, or even a brave soldier. For (it was) after this (that) he became both general and historian, famous at home and in the field, on land and on sea.

He was the first deified Roman about whom historians have written. If you would know him as a historian, read his “Commentaries on the Gallic War,” which are so accurately written that they have been commended in all ages.

It is not to be supposed, however, that one person can please everybody, yet it would take a long time to tell even a part of the good things that have been written about Caesar.

References: 355; 358; 362; 39; 223; 227; 52; 198; 62; 76; 273; 210.

Exercise 62

Among the many things written about Caius Julius Caesar, we find the following:

At the age of twenty-seven he was elected pontiff; at thirty-two, quaestor; at thirty-five, aedile; at thirty-seven, grand pontiff; at thirty-eight, praetor; at forty, consul.

He set out for Gaul in 58 B.C. During the next nine years he was occupied in subduing Gaul. Twice he crossed the Rhine, twice he landed in Britain, a territory up to this time unknown to the Romans.

All who were in his army knew that they had to obey at all times. For this reason many things could be done very quickly. Under his direction, it took only a few hours
to fortify a camp. In seven days his soldiers bridged the Rhine, and in thirty days they built a fleet of twenty warships. When a thing was to be done, no obstacle could stop him.

When he knew that any one of his soldiers was well fitted to do what he wished done, he chose him, not caring a straw who the soldier was.

References: 112; 52; 21, 2; 362; 199; 50; 69; 180; 74; 146; 34; 167.

Exercise 63

No general was ever more loved by his soldiers than Caesar was. He had every confidence in, and was very careful of them, and they all felt sure that if they deserved praise, they would get it, for he usually remembered what he saw his men do and what he heard that they had done.

To his enemies, on the other hand, he was very cruel, and seldom did he forget or forgive an injury. (It was) for this reason (that) when the senate had voted for a thanksgiving of twenty days in Caesar's honor, Cato announced that he had voted against it.

After a war was over, Caesar usually treated with great honor the states which had acknowledged his authority, and upon their chiefs bestowed valuable presents.

Cicero says that no one of Caesar's many virtues was more to be admired than his goodness and mercy toward those whom he had conquered.

References: 16; 374; 183; 48; 36; 31; 365; 67.

Exercise 64

Caesar once seized a panic-stricken standard-bearer who was about to desert, turned him around, and telling him
that he had mistaken the direction of the enemy, spoke as follows:

"What is the meaning of this? Of what are you afraid? I do not wish to be too hard upon you, but you seem to be afraid of even the least sounds. Running away seems to you much easier than fighting. You know better how to carry a standard before, than after, the beginning of a battle. I am surprised to see a Roman standard-bearer run away.

"To sum up in very few words, let me give you this advice: Be sure to guard the standard which should be much dearer to you than life, and always remember that a brave man may fall, but he will not desert.

"Remember also that it will be an honor for you to have done your best.

"Either conquer or die."

References: 112; 179; 289, 3 and 5; 189; 273; 55; 173; 67; 273; 175; 332.

Exercise 65

Once upon a time, when Caesar was dining at a friend's house, he noticed that the rest of the guests, thinking the oil too rancid, refused it. He, however, to spare his entertainer's feelings, took it without any hesitation.

When on a journey through a forest with his friend Oppius, he came one night to a little hut, where there happened to be but one bed. As Oppius was not well, Caesar said, jokingly, that he preferred to sleep on the ground, since it was worth more than the bed.

One could never tell what Caesar intended to do. When on one occasion he was defending a young Numidian, King
Juba came to Rome, bringing with him money with which to influence the judges. Learning this, Caesar approached him, and seizing him by the beard, said, "I do not doubt that in your country gold has great weight, and that there you are monarch of all you survey, but it's high time for you to learn that you cannot bribe a Roman judge."

References: 12; 62; 183; 76; 91; 302; 168; 206; 58; 286, 9; 276.

Exercise 66

When Cicero assembled the senate in the temple of Jupiter Stator, November 7, 63 B.C., there was an unusually large attendance. Everybody was surprised at the place and the time of the meeting. (Meetings were not usually held so late in the day.)

Among the senators came Catiline, not at all alarmed by the watchmen, the guards, the crowds of people, or the armed knights, who had surrounded the senate. As soon as he took his usual seat, the rest of the senators arose and left their seats.

After Cicero had again and again advised him to leave the city, Catiline, attempting to defend himself, begged the senators not to believe anything against him, but they would not listen to him.

That very night he left the city, and although his friends circulated the report that he had gone into exile at Massilia, there were some who believed that he had gone to Faesulae to join Manlius.

References: 355; 358; 362; 298; 55; 240–243; 206; 268; 78; 259; 58.
Exercise 67

The next day Cicero delivered an address to the people. He let them know what was going on both in the city and out of it.

There happened to be at this time in Rome ambassadors of the Allobroges, a Gallic people, whose country lay between the Rhone and the Alps. They had come to complain of the cruelty of the Roman governors.

When they were starting for their homes, Lentulus met them, and promised them assistance if they would send cavalry to Catiline. Although these people were by no means kindly disposed toward the Romans, they decided to consult their patron, Quintus Fabius Sanga. It was through him that Cicero learned everything that the Gauls had told him.

On the night of December 2, 63 B.C., these ambassadors left Rome, and they had in their possession letters which proved, not their own ruin, but that of the conspirators.

References: 78; 167; 213; 202; 185; 220; 374; 259; 72; 44; 355; 357; 362; 291; 49.

Exercise 68

By a previously arranged plan, the ambassadors of the Allobroges, who had come to the Flaminian way, where it crosses the Tiber by way of the Mulvian bridge, were arrested about midnight, as soon as they began to step on the bridge. The praetors who had come to the assistance of Cicero were willing to do what he thought best. For this reason they pretended violence so that no one might suspect the Allobroges. The leaders of the conspiracy were arrested, and the evidence was such that they dared not deny anything.
The senate ordered rewards to be given to the Allobroges, and the conspirators to be held in custody, and other arrests to be made as soon as possible.

The effect of Cicero's speech upon the people was wonderful. Many who had refused to believe Catiline a public enemy now opposed his return to the city.

References: 287; 268; 291; 275; 182; 16.

Exercise 69

When I behold the extraordinary safeguard of armed soldiers resorted to, no doubt for the preservation of the state; when I catch, as I cannot but do, the throb of public anxiety which beats from one end to the other of the forum; when I reflect on what may be the fate of our city and country, — it seems to me that I never rose in a court of justice with so much embarrassment as on this occasion.

I feel, fellow-citizens, that you are as much troubled as I am, and I call upon you in the name of the immortal gods to give peace to us all, by a speedy verdict of conviction, if you find the defendants guilty, or by a speedy verdict of acquittal, if you think them innocent.

Suggestions

The following is given to show the order in which the above exercise may be rendered in Latin:

Beholding (dative singular), fellow-citizens, this guard of armed men, which no one can doubt has been summoned (276) to protect (49) the state; feeling (it is not possible for me not to feel it) how much the mind of each one (156, 4) of you (104) is troubled (181); reflecting in how
great danger the state is (167), — I seem to myself never before to have risen with like disturbance of mind to make (197) a speech in court.

Of (ab) you, fellow-citizens, who in my opinion indeed are disturbed by not less anxiety, I demand that by (per) the immortal gods, either by convicting (199) these men, if you find that they are to be blamed, or (332) if they are innocent, by acquitting (199) them, you restore (206) peace to the Roman people.

*It is not possible for me not to feel it,* non potest fieri me non sentire.

**Exercise 70**

The punishment of the conspirators was now to be determined upon. Cicero, therefore, summoned the senate on the 5th of December, to decide what action was to be taken.

Some of the senators favored imprisonment for life; others, capital punishment. When Cicero declared that the conspirators were public enemies, not citizens, his friends, fearing that he was in danger, crowded around him and implored him to think of his own safety. He, on the other hand, urged them to consider the interests of the state and to take no thought for his safety.

Cato was the last of the senators to speak, and the result of his speech was that the minds of many were completely changed, and the five leaders of the conspiracy were killed that very night. It makes us shudder to think that they were hurled down into the darkness of the great sewer which flows under the Tullianum, the dark, frightful, underground prison of the Romans.

After this, not only did no others join Catiline, but even his friends one by one seemed to desert him. This did
not prevent his trying to raise an army. The next year he was killed in a battle in Etruria.

References: 350; 361; 206; 167; 274; 278; 340; 44; 189; 213; 78; 183; 275.

Exercise 71

In the year 81 B.C., after Sulla’s conquest of Mithridates, he claimed for himself the surname Felix, as he felt that he owed his success to the gods.

Everybody in Rome looked upon him as a master. He used to say that there never had been, and there never would be, many Sullas. A gilt equestrian statue with the inscription, “To Cornelius Sulla, the Fortunate Commander,” was erected in his honor, before the rostra.

On his return to Italy, he left Murena with two legions in Asia. The latter was eager for glory himself, and pretended that Mithridates had not withdrawn from Cappadocia. He, therefore, not only marched into this place, but even laid waste the fields of Pontus.

At this time Mithridates was not prepared to fight, and the result was that he offered no opposition to the progress of Murena.

References: 362; 246; 62; 183; 19; 16; 10; 123; 127; 210; 275.

Exercise 72

Early in the spring, Murena decided to oppose Mithridates by force, and for this reason he assembled a large army. With difficulty, however, did he effect a retreat from Pontus, and after this Mithridates quickly overran the whole of Cappadocia.
Not long afterwards, Gabinius arrived in Asia with orders from Sulla to Murena to desist from hostilities.

Although Sulla had recalled Murena, and had sent Gabinius to defend the Roman interests in Asia, Mithridates knew that it was he himself who was an especial object of hatred to the Romans.

Therefore, since he distrusted the Romans and both feared their legions and feared for his own troops, Mithridates decided to raise an army that would be an honor to himself and his country.

References: 95; 74; 210; 259; 206; 197; 181; 49; 44.

Exercise 73

In Bithynia, a state adjacent to Pontus, things of a different character were going on. After the death of Nicomedes III, who had been very friendly to the Roman people, and who may have been persuaded to leave his kingdom to them, Bithynia was declared a Roman province. This was the cause of the war that had so long seemed to be inevitable.

Mithridates, who now had an army of one hundred and twenty thousand foot soldiers and sixteen thousand horsemen, and a fleet that greatly surpassed that of the Romans, was well prepared to oppose them. He sent word that he would declare war against the Romans if they did not restore Bithynia to the son of Nicomedes.

Learning this, the Romans thought it expedient to send both consuls, Lucius Licinius Lucullus and Marcus Aurelius Cotta, with a large army into Asia.

On their departure from Rome, they received orders to spare no one, and because of this order no one was spared.

References: 273; 43; 206; 374; 286, 9; 16; 65; 43.
Neither Lucullus nor Cotta seemed able to oppose Mithridates, who marched through almost the whole of Bithynia without encountering any resistance.

In the first battle, the legions under the command of Cotta were conquered, the ships were sunk, and very few of the Romans were spared by Mithridates.

Now both by sea and land he attacked Cyzicus, a city of Asia friendly to the Romans.

Lucullus, who had been in Phrygia, seeing that it was of great importance to him and Cotta for their forces to be united, followed Mithridates to Cyzicus, where he cut him off from supplies by land, while the winter storms prevented his getting supplies by sea.

Since all hope of taking the city was out of the question, Mithridates thought it wise not to oppose any longer a general of such perseverance and wisdom. So, after losing great numbers of troops, he started for Pontus. When he arrived here, he had no means of opposing Lucullus, who, at that time, was in close pursuit.

References: 74; 43; 286, 9; 38; 275; 195.

Again and again was Mithridates defeated, and finally, he fled to Armenia. At that time, Tigranes, his son-in-law, was the most powerful king of Asia, but he thought it expedient not to make war openly against the Romans; on this account, although he received Mithridates into his kingdom, he refused to admit him into his presence, and he did not even attempt his restoration.

When Appius Claudius, who in the name of Lucullus
had come to demand the surrender of Mithridates, had acted very insolently, not only did Tigranes refuse to give him up, but now gave him a royal reception.

Meanwhile Lucullus had brought upon himself the enmity of the equites, the farmers of the revenue, whom he had charged with avarice. Because of the complaints of this class, he was afterwards recalled.

References: 33; 275; 305; 16; 12; 206; 35; 74.

Exercise 76

Tigranes now felt that it was worth his while to consult Mithridates and make him a participant in his plans. Contrary to the advice of Mithridates, Tigranes attacked Lucullus at Tigranocerta and was defeated with great loss. After this, Tigranes did not hesitate to give to the king of Pontus the command of the whole war.

In the following summer, Lucullus marched into the heart of Armenia, and again defeated the combined forces of the two kings near Artaxata.

On account of the extreme cold at this season, there were many deaths among the Roman troops. This and the homesickness of the soldiers made the farther advance of the Roman general impossible, and so he turned aside into Mesopotamia.

Meanwhile, he intrusted the defense of Pontus to Fabius, his lieutenant. Both he and Triarius, a Roman general, were routed and many of their soldiers killed.

The Romans began to think that, although Asia was a Roman province, they would never be able to lead a secure life there.

References: 183; 38; 44; 39; 276; 198; 54.
The troops of Lucullus were so influenced by Clodius, his personal enemy, and by reports from friends at home that Lucullus did not accomplish anything. Need we say that into Pontus and Cappadocia the two kings soon marched?

The country which Lucullus had conquered was again in the hands of the enemy, and by a decree of the senate, the province of Bithynia and the command against Mithridates were transferred to Glabrio, the consul.

On his arrival in Bithynia, he made no attempt to assume the command of the army, but remained in his province and refused to accept the troops from Lucullus.

The Romans soon realized that they had made a great mistake in appointing Glabrio, for, although they considered him well versed in politics, they feared that he was not prepared to manage so great a war.

The result of this was that many felt sorry that Lucullus had been recalled.

The following year Lucullus resigned his command, and Pompey, who just a short time before had conquered the pirates, took charge of the army.

References: 210; 268; 368; 16; 275; 199; 274; 37.

Exercise 78

A friend of Cicero has written the following:

"Lucullus and Pompey, it is true, differ from each other in many respects.

"We all feel that each one of these has done his best. Of what, then, should the former be ashamed? No one can blame him, as it was the battle between Mithridates
and Triarius that seemed to paralyze the Roman troops. He did not know that the day was near at hand on which he would have to give up his army to Glabrio. If he had remained in Asia, there is no doubt that he might have been able to remedy matters in some measure. He was not far from Sinope, the capital of Pontus, when he was recalled.

"We have great faith in both Lucullus and Pompey. That the senate has recalled the former is a cause of general sorrow.

"People say that some senators regret that action, but that is now too late.

"Let us, therefore, if in any way it can be done, make use of the latter. The gods themselves seem to have sent him to us at this very time. The enemy are frightened by the mere mention of his name. Will any one at such a time as this say anything about precedents? Remember that laws are silent, so to speak, amid the clashing of arms, and that then it is intellect rather than bodily strength that counts."

References: 105; 155; 37; 229; 273; 145; 79; 127; 148; 175; 154.

Exercise 79

An historian writes the following about Lucullus: "In my opinion, Lucullus is a general worthy of great honor, although he has been recalled, a fact of which each one of you is aware.

"It seems to me that his own soldiers are the very ones who have taken away the command from him. Some of these have deserted the army on account of homesickness, others on account of envy."
"We all know that the envious usually make their attacks upon the noblest and best.

"(It was) at the very time at which he was showing himself superior to all the rest of the generals who had been sent against Mithridates and the other powerful kings of Asia, (that) he was recalled.

"Now, since the fortunes of us all are at stake, we ought to make use of our best generals as long as they live. Therefore let us send Cneius Pompey to Asia to protect our colonists and our interests there."

References: 112; 140; 156, 6; 127; 137; 79; 206; 49.

**Exercise 80**

The same historian writes the following about Pompey: "If anybody in the world has always been exceptionally successful, Pompey has been. No one doubts that he should be chosen commander at once.

"There have been Roman generals who, mindful of themselves and forgetful of us, have not only been willing to sell offices, but have really done so. Do you not think that the qualities desired in a general, especially at such a time as this, are valor, honesty, and uprightness, not glibness of tongue or knowledge of the arts and sciences?

"Your countenances are, in a way, silent speeches, and your murmurs of approval show that you all know such a man.

"Whatever he undertakes, the gods willing, he will accomplish, for not only theoretical knowledge, but practical experience also, is necessary in a consummate commander."

References: 147; 276; 103; 128; 154; 151; 220; 74; 18; 331.
Exercise 81

As Cicero has written almost all that is known of Aulus Gabinius Archias, you may say on his authority that Archias was a man with a long line of ancestry, and that when a young man he left his home to travel in the rest of Asia and in Greece. He says, “in the rest of Asia,” for Archias was born in Antioch, once a bustling town of Syria.

In those days it often happened that a young man was received as a son or friend into the home of a distinguished Roman. If you would know whether this was done in later years, read the life of the author of “Utopia.”

We feel sure that if Archias had not come to Rome in 102 B.C., he could not have accompanied Lucius Lucullus to Sicily.

The purpose of this journey is not known, but it is known that while Archias was at Heraclea he was made a citizen of that city.

References: 62; 273; 74; 181; 76; 206; 95; 39; 170; 229; 362; 181.

Exercise 82

Gentlemen of the jury, since Gratius has at considerable length offered to you various conjectures as to my line of defense, perhaps it may be as well that I should take the liberty of stating to you what really is the defendant’s case, and that you should know from me myself what I hope to prove.

Since Gratius has indulged in so many remarks upon what I do not intend to say, I should like to offer a single observation on what he has said.
First, however, I should like to ask if any one of you ever before this day saw a prosecuting attorney who stated his case with greater care than the gentleman before whom we appear.

I thank him most heartily for what he has said, and I know that I shall make you feel that so unusual a case has demanded an unusual course of procedure.

SUGGESTIONS

The following arrangement of the above exercise will suggest the order for the Latin translation:

Since Gratius, gentlemen of the jury, with many words has expressed to you many conjectures (as to) how (159) I intend to defend (167) this case, perhaps it will not be foreign (to the matter) if I in reply lay before you the real case of the defendant, so that you may hear from me myself (127) the things which I hope to prove (185; 189). Since, however, Gratius has made (252) so many statements about (dé) those things which I do not intend to say, I should like to touch upon one of these.

First, however, I wish to ask if any one (145) of you (104) ever before this day heard (169) a judge state a case with greater care (70) than he who presides over this court at this time has done.

To him I give the greatest thanks because he has said this, and I know that I shall make (183) you feel (210) that I, compelled by the unusual difficulties of the case, have made use of (183) an unusual kind of pleading (195).

Exercise 83

It may have been Marcus Lucullus with whom Archias went to Sicily. There is no doubt that after leaving Sicily
Lucullus went to Heraclea and was living here when Archias was admitted to citizenship.

Cicero does not say why Gratius opposed the citizenship of Archias. Possibly he, a man entirely unknown in other respects, was urged on by the friends of Pompey, whom Lucullus had defeated the year before.

It was not difficult to prove that Archias was a Roman citizen. Cicero accordingly devoted much of his time to the praise of poets and other learned men, and he had a good chance to show his own ability as an orator.

If you would like to know the real tendency of Cicero's talent, read first the fourth oration against Catiline, then the speech for Murena, delivered about the same time, for Cicero has written no more agreeable speech.

References: 273; 310; 276; 169; 275; 179.

Exercise 84

Marcus Antonius never forgave Cicero for the attacks he had made upon him in his Philippics, and so it does not seem strange that he wished to get rid of him.

It is not to be supposed that Octavianus Caesar, another of the triumvirs, would spare his uncle's bitterest enemy. There is no doubt that for this reason Cicero was among those to be put to death at once by order of the triumvirs.

This news reached him at Tusculum. He fled to Antium, hoping to sail from that place, but adverse winds prevented his escape. Disappointed in this hope, he went to his villa and remained there until the soldiers of the triumvirs came. His slaves were very loyal to him and were ready to defend him faithfully and fearlessly, but at his order they placed him in his litter and carried him to the seashore, a mile away.
With difficulty did Cicero prevent his slaves from attacking the enemies who had overtaken them. He was murdered near Formiae, December 7, 43 B.C., in the sixty-fourth year of his age. His head and his hands were taken to Rome and by order of Antony were placed in the rostra, so that he might see, I presume, that Cicero was no longer to be feared.

References: 58; 275; 250; 358; 362; 52; 206.

Exercise 85

Virgil belongs to the class of poets who put the man first and nature afterward. He was born in Andes, a village about three miles from Mantua, a town of Cisalpine Gaul. His father, though not a millionaire, was by no means a poor man. Publius Virgilius Maro even as a child was not strong, and so, when a young fellow, he often went away from home for the winter on account of the cold in Mantua. At thirty he became a favorite of Augustus and of Maecenas. Although he owned a house in Rome, next to the palace of Maecenas, it was very often unoccupied. He used to say that Rome was such a crowded city, he could not find there a place in which to write.

Calm and silence were indispensable to him. He was very fond of Campania and of Sicily, and he tells us himself that (it was) in Sicily (that) a great part of the "Aeneid" was written.

References: 33; 77; 210; 49.

Exercise 86

A few months before his death, Virgil went to Greece, where he intended to spend two years in perfecting the "Aeneid," which he considered his greatest work.
He met Augustus in Athens and was persuaded to return with him to Italy. A few days after reaching Brundisium he died, and was buried in Naples, a beautiful city of Italy.

On his deathbed, Virgil asked that his last poem be brought to him, so that with his own hands he might throw it into the flames. He died, however, without doing this, but provision was made in his will for the destruction of this work.

Augustus would not allow this, but he gave orders to two of Virgil's friends, Varius and Tucca, to make the necessary corrections, but no additions.

This was a work requiring the greatest care, and both Varius and Tucca said repeatedly that, although they were willing to do this for Virgil's sake, they were sorry that he had not lived longer, since only Virgil himself could give the finishing touches to his great poem.

References: 60; 199; 286, 9; 43; 206; 77; 200; 16; 268.

Exercise 87

There are many ways in which one may become famous. Paris, 'tis true, was a prince, son of the noble Priam, but (it is) not for this reason (that) he is so well known.

After he had rendered his verdict, that Venus was the most beautiful of all the goddesses, he started under her guidance for Greece, where he was received with great honor by Menelaus, king of Sparta. Notwithstanding this, he had no hesitancy in violating every divine obligation. For, not long after, he persuaded Helen, the wife of Menelaus, his host, who had treated him with especial kindness, to elope with him.

The noblest of the Greek chieftains had been suitors of
Helen before her marriage with Menelaus, but this did not prevent their making a solemn promise to defend her, even at their own risk, if any one should ever try to take her away from her husband.

References: 273; 210; 74; 60; 206; 275; 183; 145.

Exercise 88

Menelaus now called upon them to fulfill their pledge. For months preparations went on throughout the whole of Greece, and thus it came about that the Greeks, under the leadership of Agamemnon, with the mighty fleet which they had built, started for Troy.

When the Trojans were informed of their departure, they felt that something must be done at once to avert the impending danger.

Accordingly they chose as their leaders the valiant Hector and Aeneas, son of Venus and Anchises, one of whom excelled in wisdom and courage, the other surpassed in strength and beauty. Hector tried to persuade his brother, Paris, to restore Helen to her husband, Menelaus, but his efforts were unavailing.

Among the chieftains of the Greeks were Agamemnon, brother of Menelaus; Achilles, their most illustrious warrior; Ajax, mighty in stature and courage; Diomedes, scarcely inferior to Achilles; Ulysses, a very shrewd and crafty fellow.

References: 206; 16; 75; 74; 152; 83.

Exercise 89

After a siege of ten years Troy was taken through a scheme suggested by the crafty Ulysses.

The Trojans had learned that the Greeks intended to leave Troy. Thinking that they had all gone, the Trojans'
were sleeping so soundly that nothing prevented the Greeks in the dead of night from entering and capturing the city.

It remains to be said that nearly all of the Trojans were either killed or made prisoners. Aeneas, with his father, Anchises, his little son, Ascanius, and a few companions, made his escape from the burning city, built twenty ships out of timber from the forests of Mt. Ida, and started in search of an unknown but divinely appointed home.

Was not so wise, so pious a hero, the son of Venus, the favorite of the Olympian gods, most worthy to be the founder of Lavinium, a holy city?

If you would know more about this great man, read the "Aeneid," than which no other poem is more celebrated.

**References:** 287; 98; 268; 275; 95; 332; 157; 273.

**Exercise 90**

It would be pleasant to accompany Aeneas from Troy to Laurentum by way of Thrace, Delos, Crete, and Epirus, stopping at Carthage long enough to find out whether Dido was kind to strangers or not.

If Aeneas were to advertise to-day a personally conducted excursion of this kind, we have no doubt that many would be glad to accompany him.

Would that we could go! Everybody, however, has neither the leisure nor the means to undertake so long a trip. Furthermore, many of these ports and islands are for Aeneas merely places which he touches, and of so little importance to Virgil that he has not taken the trouble to describe them. Even of Africa he does not say much, although his hero remains here all winter. This is not the true country of the "Aeneid." The places best
known and best loved by Virgil are Sicily and Italy, whither he likes to lead his hero, Aeneas, and where he himself is glad to rest.

References: 65; 58; 77; 171; 228; 189; 128; 273; 340; 34; 210; 259; 52.

Exercise 91

Tradition asserts that Mt. Olympus, situated on the coast of Thessaly, and extending six thousand feet in height, was the home of the gods. On the summit of the mountain was the palace of Jupiter, where he as king sat upon his throne. Each of the gods had his own dwelling, but at the summons of Jupiter they assembled daily in his palace. Here they passed judgment upon the affairs of both gods and men, feasting meanwhile upon ambrosia and nectar served by the lovely Hebe, and listening to Apollo, who played, and the Muses, who sang for them. At sunset they retired each to his own home.

Tradition asserts also that it was (the business) of the goddesses to name the seasons and to guard the gate through which the Celestials passed from heaven to earth.

References: 16; 53; 95; 62; 45; 155; 58.

Exercise 92

The ancient Greeks and Romans believed that there was a place for punishment after death, called Tartarus. This was supposed to be under ground, near Lake Avernus, and the entrance to it was guarded by Cerberus, lying at full length; the way to it was barred by the river Styx. It was regarded as the prison of the gods. The Titans, when con-
quered, were shut up there, and Jupiter often threatened the gods themselves with banishment to its gloomy regions.

Every evening Mercury brought the spirits of those who had died during the day to the shore of the river Styx, where Charon stood ready to ferry them across, if all the conditions had been fulfilled.

They then appeared before the judges, Minos and Rhadamanthus, who ordered the good sent by one road to the fields of Elysium, and the wicked by the other road to the prison of Tartarus, to receive punishment worthy of their crimes.

Before they were sent to Elysium, the good drank of the water of Lethe, to produce forgetfulness of the sorrows of this life.

References: 182; 62; 16; 155; 83; 206; 244; 245.

Exercise 93

Charon, son of Erebus and Nox, was one of the gods of the lower world. His office was to carry the dead over the river Styx to Pluto's realms.

At burial, an obolus, the amount which Charon demanded of each one whom he took across in his boat, was placed in the mouth of the dead person. Those who had been drowned, or had been unable to pay an obolus, or had, for any reason, been deprived of burial, were compelled to wander about the banks of the Styx for a century before they were allowed to cross the river.

No living person was allowed to cross the river unless he had sought for, and found, a golden bough, the especial gift for beautiful Proserpina. Deiphobe, the Cumaean Sibyl, pointed out to an inquirer how and where to look for this golden bough. When this was found it was shown
to Charon, the boatman, whom the poets represent as a rough-looking old man, who holds in his hand a long pole for the guidance of his boat.

References: 312; 49; 179; 138; 56; 52; 16.

Exercise 94

Cerberus, the famous dog of the lower world, is represented opening his three mouths and making the realms of Pluto resound with his barking. He guards the entrance to Tartarus, the regions of the dead, so that very few dare to approach.

Those who wished to go down to Avernus he did not try to keep away, but he seized and devoured those attempting to return. When loosed from his hundred chains even the Furies could not tame him, but Orpheus lulled him to sleep with his lyre, and in his twelfth and last labor Hercules subdued him.

When Hercules asked Pluto's permission to lead Cerberus to the upper world, Pluto granted it on condition that he could do this without using weapons.

In spite of the monster's struggles, Hercules accomplished the feat, exhibited him to wondering mortals, and then led him back to Pluto's realms.

References: 210; 214; 180; 206; 200.

Exercise 95

Laocoön, a Trojan hero, was a priest of Neptune, who tried to keep his countrymen from leading into the city the immense horse built by the Greeks with Minerva's aid. He was no ordinary man, and there is no doubt that the crafty Ulysses was known to him, and that he suspected
that there was some trick on his part. When Laocoön had run down from his temple and had heard Thymoetes advising his fellow-citizens to lead the horse into the city, he called out, "I fear Greeks even when they offer us gifts," an expression which has become proverbial.

The Trojans had been informed by a prophet that if they gained possession of this horse, they would conquer the Greeks. Laocoön, however, did not believe this, and, rushing forward, he hurled his mighty spear into the side of the monstrous horse.

On this account, Minerva sent two enormous serpents from the sea to destroy Laocoön and his two little sons. The Trojans felt that the gods had punished Laocoön deservedly, because he had dared to strike the horse sacred to Minerva.

Among the famous and wonderful groups of statuary in the Vatican may now be seen that of Laocoön and his two little sons.

References: 275; 276; 206; 96; 374; 69; 182; 131; 273.

Exercise 96

On the 13th of August, my dear friend, I received from you three letters; the first, written July 4; the second, July 15; the third, July 25.

I am grateful to you for your many acts of kindness and hope that some day I can requite you as you deserve.

I cannot understand why those very ones by whom I was once envied have been saved, and why they are trying to take away from me not life but honor. What do they mean? Why am I an object of hatred to them?

Once in a while, I do think that the tribunes are not all hostile to me, and that they will come to my aid. Then I
shall return to Rome, to my friend T. Pomponius, whose surname is Atticus. This friend of mine was the first Roman who dared to say openly that the arts of Greece were pleasing to him. I am glad, however, that his Roman friend is much dearer to him than his Greek friends.

When will you come to Thessalonica? I shall not be wholly wretched if you are with me. Do please come. Keep well.

Thessalonica, August 15, 58 B.C.

References: 361; 357; 359; 20; 62, 8; 180; 43; 167; 49; 58; 45; 89; 220; 177; 387; 362.

Exercise 97

Dyrrachium, Nov. 26, 58 B.C.

Tullius sends greetings to his Terentia. Would that you and my brother Quintus were friends, or rather, not enemies! It always seems to be "tit for tat" between you. There are so few of us, that I should be very glad if we could all live under the same roof. I am not blaming you alone, for my brother is by no means of a mild or peaceable disposition.

What are we to do? What is to become of our boy, Marcus? Surely, I have been deserted both by friends and by fortune. Who is there who does not know that (it was) Cicero (who) saved our country when Catiline was trying to destroy it? True, I had to shape my course to circumstances, but why should I be ashamed? Those who keep saying that I acted tyrannically have either forgotten, or do not know, why consuls are so named.

(It is) for this reason, because it is (the duty) of the consul both to consult the senate, and to consult for the interest
of the state. This I as consul did, because all that I did was by the advice of the senate, and from love of country.

Are they not glad that the city is rid of those desperadoes?

I cannot write more because of my tears. At any rate, I think that the facts in the case will have more weight than tears. Let me know what is going on and how you are. Remember me to Atticus and take good care of Marcus.

REFERENCES: 387; 273; 210; 72; 37; 33; 44; 62; 314; 177; 158; 167.

EXERCISE 98

MY DEAR ATTICUS:

Do not imagine that I shall forget Clodius, of whom you spoke in your letter of December 10. How can I ever forget that scoundrel? He accuse sensible and respectable men of disloyalty? I wonder whether he repents of that or not.

Life is full of sorrows, which I must bear bravely for the sake of my wife and children. Where in the world are they? News has reached me that our house has been burned, and I am sure that they have not enough money with which to buy another, even at a low price.

I am tired of life, and yet I ought to hope, for it is the duty of the tribunes to decide whether I am to remain in exile or return to Rome.

In one of your late letters, you asked if they were friendly to me. I do not know, for one writes one thing, another, another, but now it looks that way. It is of great importance to my wife and myself that Milo be friendly to us.
If I have not thanked you for the many things you have done, rest assured that I do feel grateful to you for your many favors.

Take good care of yourself.

References: 178; 36; 358; 368; 161; 35; 37; 171; 50; 206; 73; 273; 170; 83; 38; 175; 132; 387.

Exercise 99

Thessalonica, Jan. 13, 57 B.C.

Six years ago, my dear Atticus, all in Rome called Cicero the father of his country. Now the same Cicero, at forty-nine years of age, is many miles from his home. Will he ever return home and move back into his own house?

You will understand that I do grieve at my fate.

What are those who asked aid of me when I was consul, doing? I must confess that I have my doubts about them, for I have written to them repeatedly, but they have not answered. I do not intend to conceal anything from you, for all our hopes are centered in you, and you say that we can depend upon the new tribunes, since they did not bring this accusation against me.

I have every confidence in you, and I hope that they will keep their promise. And yet — one can never tell, for "'Twixt cup and lip there's many a slip."

From Thessalonica I intend to go to Dyrrachium as soon as possible.

Is there any news? Some one is waiting for this letter. Good-by. Don't forget that to your keeping I commit my little son.

References: 60; 52; 164; 59; 56; 16; 302; 158; 177; 178.
EXERCISE 100

MY DEAR TERENTIA:

For more than thirteen months have I been away from home, and from you who are much dearer to me than my life. And yet—I should not say this, since life of this kind is not worth very much.

From many letters, my dearest Terentia, I learn that you are a woman of wonderful firmness of character and exceptional endurance, and that you can be firm or gentle, as occasion requires. This, however, does not seem strange to me.

You surely have a good chance nowadays to show your remarkable endurance. Do take care of yourself. News has reached me that you have been ill. If you are well, my troubles will not seem so great.

Plaucius has been very friendly to me, and has asked me to spend a few days with himself and his friends in the country for the sake of amusement. Although I have been there twice in the course of a month, I shall be glad to go, for Plaucius is always the same.

I intended to go to Epirus, but Plaucius is not willing for me to go there. He has heard that I am to be recalled soon, but "Hearsay is no evidence."

It seems scarcely necessary to exhort both you and my darling Tullia to keep up your courage.

Really, it seems to be all over with me. Good-by.

God bless you.

Would that I were with you!

MAY 12, 57 B.C.

REFERENCES: 52; 92; 89; 67; 34; 72; 16; 220; 259; 189; 190; 316; 177; 232; 310.
QUOTATIONS

Latin quotations presenting in order Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives, Adverbs, Pronouns, and Numerals have been here introduced for the purpose of reviewing forms, a knowledge of which is essential to work in Prose Composition.

The English quotations accompanying these are not to be considered translations, but in many cases they seem to be suggested by the Latin.

### Nouns

| 1–2 | First Declension |
| 3–10 | Second Declension |
| 11–22 | Third Declension |
| 23–26 | Fourth Declension |
| 27–28 | Fifth Declension |

### Verbs

| 29 | First Conjugation |
| 30 | Second Conjugation |
| 31 | Third Conjugation |
| 32 | Fourth Conjugation |
| 33–43 | Irregular |
| 44–48 | Deponent |
| 49–52 | Semi-deponent |
| 53 | Frequentative |
| 54 | Inceptive |
| 55–57 | Defective |
| 58–63 | Impersonal |
ADJECTIVES

64-65 Declension and Comparison of us adjectives of the First and Second Declension
66-71 Declension of irregular us adjectives of the First and Second Declension
72-73 Declension and Comparison of er adjectives of the First and Second Declension
74-76 Declension of irregular er adjectives of the First and Second Declension
77-78 Declension and Comparison of er adjectives of the Third Declension
79 Declension and Comparison of is adjectives of the Third Declension
80 Declension and Comparison of us adjectives of the Third Declension
81 Declension and Comparison of vetus
82-85 Declension and Comparison of adjectives ending in x
86-103 Irregular Comparisons
104-113 Comparison of Adverbs

PRONOUNS

114-116 Personal and Reflexive
117-120 Possessive
121-123 Demonstrative
124 The Determinative
125 The Intensive
126 The Pronoun of Identity
127 The Relative qui
128 The Interrogative quis
129-141 Indefinite

NUMERALS

142-144
Memory, the warder of the brain. —Shakespeare.

2. Vēra incessū patuit *dea.* —Virgil.
She moves a goddess, and she looks a queen. —Pope.

A friend i' the court is better than a penny in purse. —Shakespeare.

4. Est *deus* in nōbīs. —Ovid.
There's a divinity that shapes our ends,
Rough-hew them how we will. —Shakespeare.

5. Scinditur incertum studia in contrāria *vulgus.* —Virgil.
As many men, so many minds.

6. Dulce est dēsipere in *locō.* —Horace.
A little nonsense now and then
Is relished by the wisest men.

In the lexicon of youth, which fate reserves
For a bright manhood, there is no such word
As — *fail.* —Edward Bulwer-Lytton.

Books are the legacies that a great genius leaves to mankind. —Addison.

Quit yourselves like men. —I Samuel.
10. Ex parvis saepe magnarum momenta rerum pendent. —Livy.

Oft what seems
A trifle, a mere nothing by itself,
In some nice situation, turns the scale
Of fate, and rules the most important actions.
—Thomson.


Calamity is man’s true touchstone.
—Beaumont and Fletcher.


The cold neutrality of an impartial judge. —Burke.


Yes, gentle time, thy gradual, healing hand
Hath stolen from sorrow’s grasp the envenom’d dart.
—Mrs. Tighe.


As thy days, so shall thy strength be.
—Deuteronomy.

15. Immēnsa per aequora. —Virgil.

Thou glorious sea! more pleasing far
When all thy waters are at rest.
—Mrs. Hemans.

16. Ōs hominī sublime dedit, caelumque tuērī. —Ovid.

God hath made man upright. —Ecclesiastes.
17. Obstipuēre animī, gelidusque per īma cucurrit ossa tremor. — Virgil.
And troubled blood through his pale face was seen, As it a running messenger had been. — Spenser.

18. Bonus atque fidus
Iūdex honestum praetulit ūtilī. — Horace.
He who the sword of heaven will bear
Should be as holy as severe. — Shakespeare.

Tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep!

20. It mare prōruptum. — Virgil.
Roll on, thou deep and dark blue ocean — roll!

They break their faith to God as well as us.

22. Iūra dabat lēgēsque virīs. — Virgil.
Mark what unvary'd laws preserve each state,
Laws wise as nature, and as fixed as fate. — Pope.

23. Früctū nōn foliīs, arborem aestimā. — Phaedrus.
The tree is known by his fruit.

Hit the nail on the head. — Beaumont and Fletcher.
25. *Domī* habuit unde disceret. — *Terence.*

The means that heaven yields must be embrac’d
And not neglected. — *Shakespeare.*

26. Tertia iam lūnae sē *cornua* lūmine complent. — *Virgil.*

And thrice, ere thrice yon moon had filled her horn. — *Young.*

27. Iam tempus āgī rēs. — *Virgil.*

Now is the accepted time. — *2 Corinthians.*

28. Carpe *diem.* — *Horace.*

Now’s the day, and now’s the hour. — *Burns.*

29. Caelum, nōn animum *mutant,* qui trāns mare currunt. — *Horace.*

And ’tis a poor relief we gain,
To change the place, but keep the pain. — *Isaac Watts.*

30. Saepe tacēns vōcem verbaque vultus *habet.* — *Ovid.*

The silence often of pure innocence
Persuades, when speaking fails. — *Shakespeare.*

31. Trōs Tyriusque mihi nūllō discrimine *agētur.* — *Virgil.*

Equal and exact justice to all men, of whatever state
or persuasion, religious or political. — *Thomas Jefferson.*

32. *Audi,* vidē, tacē, sī vīs vivere in pāce. — *Maxim.*

Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice. — *Shakespeare.*
33. Si animus est aequus tibi, satis habēs. — Plautus.

Poor and content, is rich, and rich enough. — Shakespeare.

34. Possunt, quia posse videntur. — Virgil.

And all may do what has by man been done. — Young.

35. Quae nōn prōsunt singula, multa iuvant. — Ovid.

By uniting we stand, by dividing we fall. — John Dickenson.

36. Floccī nōn faciunt. — Cicero.

A fig for care, and a fig for woe. — John Heywood.

37. Leve fit, quod bene fertur onus. — Ovid.

There's no way to make sorrows light
But in the noble bearing. — W. Rowley.

38. Mediō tūtissimus ibis. — Ovid.

Hold fast the golden mean. — Cowper.

39. Sērus in caelum redeās!

Long may you live!

40. Libenter hominēs id quod volunt creōdunt. — Caesar.

Thy wish was father, Harry, to that thought. — Shakespeare.
Idem *velle* atque *nolle*, ea dénum fírma amícitia est. — *Sallust.*

In companions
That do converse and waste the time together,
Whose souls do bear an equal yoke of love,
There needs must be a like proportion
Of lineaments, of manners, and of spirit.

— *Shakespeare.*

42. *Esse* quam *vidéri* bonus *málebat*. — *Sallust.*

Men should be what they seem.

— *Shakespeare.*

43. Deus *dabit* hís quoque fínem.

Behind the clouds the sun is shining.

— *Longfellow.*

44. *Insectantur* furiae.

My conscience hath a thousand several tongues.

— *Shakespeare.*

45. *Dis aliter* *visum*.

Man proposes, but God disposes.

— *Thomas à Kempis.*

46. Cúrae levés *loguuntur*, ingentés stupent.

— *Seneca.*

Light cares speak, when mighty grievés are dumb.

— *Daniel’s “Rosamond.”*

47. *Moriámur* et in media arma ruámus.

Let us do or die.

— *Proverb.*

48. *Metírì* sē quemque suō modulō ac pede vērum est.

Measure your mind’s height by the shade it casts!

— *Browning.*
49. Sapere *audē*.
   Be wise to-day; 'tis madness to defer. — Horace.
   — Young.

50. *Quī sībi fīdit*
   Dux regit exāmen. — Horace.
   Trust thyself; every heart vibrates to that iron string. — Emerson.

   His overthrow heap'd happiness upon him.
   — Shakespeare.

52. *Ingenium rēs*
   Adversae nudāre *solent*, cēlāre secundae. — Horace.
   Sweet are the uses of adversity,
   Which, like the toad, ugly and venomous,
   Wears yet a precious jewel in his head;
   And this our life, exempt from public haunt,
   Finds tongues in trees, books in the running brooks,
   Sermons in stones, and good in everything.
   — Shakespeare.

53. *Quī genus iactat suum, aliēna laudat.* — Seneca.
   From yon blue heaven above us bent,
   The gardener Adam and his wife
   Smile at the claims of long descent.
   — Tennyson.

   Present fears
   Are less than horrible imaginings. — Shakespeare.
55. Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit. — VIRGIL.
Sweet is pleasure after pain. — DRYDEN.

56. Ego verum amō, mendācem ōdi. — PLAUTUS.
Tell truth, and shame the Devil. — SHAKESPEARE.

57. Dīmidium factī est coepisse. — AUSONIUS.
The beginning is half the battle.

58. Nōn licet hominem esse saepe ita ut vult. — TERENCE.
Who does the best his circumstance allow,
Does well, acts nobly: angels could no more.
— YOUNG.

59. Velle parum est: cupiās ut rē potiāris oportet. — OVID.
In idle wishes, fools supinely stay:
Be there a will, and wisdom find a way.
— GEORGE CRABBE.

60. Tē lapsōrum miseret. — VIRGIL.
No breast so fierce, but knows some touch of pity.
— SHAKESPEARE.

61. Officiō nec tē certāsse priōrem paeniteat. — VIRGIL.
I never did repent for doing good
Nor shall not now.
— SHAKESPEARE.

62. Mē nōn sōlum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudent. — CICERO.
If hearty sorrow
Be a sufficient ransom for offense,
I tender it here: I do as truly suffer,
As e'er I did commit. — SHAKESPEARE.
63. *Taedet* caeli convexa tuēri. — *Virgil.*
Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale. — *Shakespeare.*

64. *Alta* petēns. — *Virgil.*
'Tis from high life high characters are drawn.

65. *Lēctiō varia* delēcat. — *Seneca.*
Variety's the very spice of life.

66. *Ūna* salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. — *Virgil.*
What though the field be lost,
All is not lost. — *Milton.*

67. *Per mediōs,* miscetque virīs neque cernitur ūlli. — *Virgil.*
We rightly speak of the guardian angels. — *Emerson.*

68. *Nūllus* est locus domesticā sēde iūcundior. — *Cicero.*
Be it ever so humble,
There's no place like home. — *J. Howard Payne.*

69. *Alius* in alīā rē est magis ūtilis. — *Cicero.*
Each has his own knack. — *Emerson.*

70. *Sōla* domō maeret vacua. — *Virgil.*
All that poets sing, and grief hath known
Of hopes laid waste, knells in that word — *Alone!* — *Edward Bulwer-Lytton.*

71. Nihil est tōtō quod perstet in orbe. — *Ovid.*
Every season brings new change. — *Bryant.*
   A fellow-feeling makes one wondrous kind. —David Garrick.

73. Quid nōn mortālia pectora cōgis aurī sacra famēs?
   The love of money is the root of all evil. —1 Timothy.

74. Īgnōscitō saepe alterī.
   Forgive, be generous. —Syrus, Scott.

75. Uter utrī virtūte anteferendus.
   Who deserves well, needs not another's praise. —Robert Heath.

76. Dēbēmus neutrum eōrum contrā alium iuvāre.
   Impartial are our eyes and ears. —Shakespeare.

77. Celerēs dēfer mea dicta per aurās.
   Fly upon the wings of the wind. —Psalm 18.

78. Nihil est autem tam volucre quam maledictum.
   Virtue itself 'scapes not calumnious strokes. —Cicero.

79. In rēbus asperīs et tenuī spē fortissima quaeque cōnsilia tūtissima sunt.
   The brave unfortunate are our best acquaintance;
   They show us virtue may be much distress'd,
   And give us their sample how to suffer. —Francis.
80. *Audentēs* deus ipse iuvat.
God helps them that help themselves.
—Ovid.

81. Quam *veterēs* causae necessitūdinis!
Old friends are best.
—Caesar.

82. *Ignis* edāx.
How great a matter a little fire kindleth!
—James.

83. *Vēritātis* sermō est *simplex*.
Truth needs no flowers of speech.
—Seneca.

84. *Hectōra* quis nōsset, sī *fēlix* Trōia fuisset!
For now he lives in fame though not in life.
—Shakespeare.

85. *Fāma*, malum quā nōn aliud *vēlōcius* ulla*
’Tis slander;
Whose edge is sharper than the sword; whose tongue
Outvenoms all the worms of Nile; whose breath
Rides on the posting wings.
—Shakespeare.

86. Subtexta *malīs bona* sunt.
The web of our life is of mingled yarn, good and ill together.
—Shakespeare.

87. Amīcum perdere est damnōrum *maximum*.
The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hoops of steel.
—Shakespeare.
88. Omnium rērum principia parva sunt. —Cicero.
Tall oaks from little acorns grow. —David Everett.

89. Agere cōnsīderāte plūris est quam cōgitāre prūdenter. —Cicero.
Act well your part, there all the honor lies. —Pope.

90. Si ad nātūram vīvēs, numquam eris pauper; si ad opīniōnem numquam eris dives. —Seneca.
Man's rich with little, were his judgment true:
Nature is frugal, and her wants are few. —Young.

91. Quem dī diligunt, adolēscēns moritur. —Plautus.
And early called, how blest are they
Who wait in heaven their harvest day. —Whittier.

92. Fortem facit vīcīna libertās senem. —Seneca.
'Tis liberty alone that gives the flow'r
Of fleeting life its luster and perfume. —Cowper.

93. Facilis est ad beātam vītam via. —Seneca.
Our own felicity we make or find. —Goldsmith.

94. Nihil tam difficile est quīn quaecendō investigāri possit. —Terence.
Nothing's so hard but search will find it out. —Robert Herrick.

95. Pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō. —Virgil.
Lighter than the whirlwind's blast
He vanished from our eyes. —Scott.
96. Me nulla dies tam fortibus ausis
   Dissimilem arguerit. —Virgil.
   By how much unexpected, by so much
   We must awake, endeavor for defense;
   For courage mounteth with occasion. —Shakespeare.

97. Gracilès grāmen carpsēre capellae. —Ovid.
   Animals enjoying life. —Cowper.

98. Humilemque vidēmus Ītalian.
   Italia! Oh, Italia! —Virgil.
   —Byron.

99. Ācta exteriōra indicant interiōra sēcrēta. —Coke.
   Suit the action to the word, the word to the action.
   —Shakespeare.

100. Si vis ad summum prōgredi ab infimō ārdīre.
   Life is a scale of degrees. —Syrus.
   —Emerson.

101. Discipulus est priōri posterior diēs.
   And make each day a critic on the last. —Syrus.
   —Pope.

102. Proximōrum incūriosī longinqua sectāmur.
   —Pliny the Younger.
   'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view.
   —Thomas Campbell.

103. Necessitās ultimum et maximum tēlum est. —Livy.
   'Tis necessity,
   To which the gods must yield. —Herrick.

104. Nihil enim aequē grātum est adeptīs quam concupiscentibus.
   —Pliny the Younger.
Pleasures are like poppies spread, 
You seize the flower, its bloom is shed. —Burns.

105. Occāsiō aegrē offertur; facile āmittitur. —Syrus.

There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows, and in miseries.
On such a full sea are we now afloat,
And we must take the current when it serves,
Or lose our ventures. —Shakespeare.

106. Quod nōn licet, ācrius ūrit. —Ovid.

O thoughts of men accurs’d
Past and to come, seem best; things present, worst.
—Shakespeare.

107. Fortiter malum quī patitur īdem post patitur bonum. —Plautus.

As night to stars, woe luster gives to man.
—Young.


He most lives,
Who thinks most — feels the noblest — acts the best.
—Bailey’s Festus.

109. Anima magis est ubi amat quam ubi animat.
—Maxim.

Where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.
—Matthew.
110. Maximae cuique fortūnae minimē crēdendum est. —Livy.

Now, now she meets you with a glorious prize,
And spreads her locks before her as she flies.
—Dryden.

111. Accipe quam prīnum; brevis est occāsiō lucrī. —Martial.

Miss not the occasion; by the forelock take
That subtle Power, the never-halting time,
Lest a mere moment's putting off should make
Mischance almost as heavy as a crime.
—Wordsworth.

112. Saepius locūtum, numquam mē tacuisse paenitet. —Syrus.

Give it an understanding, but no tongue.
—Shakespeare.

113. Factumque diū cēlāvit. —Virgil.

For murder, though it have no tongue, will speak
With most miraculous organ. —Shakespeare.

114. Brevis ā nātūrā nŏbis vita data est. —Cicero.

Life is short and the art long. —Hippocrates.

115. Ė caelō dēscendit, nōsce tē ipsum. —Juvenal.

Know then thyself, presume not God to scan;
The proper study of mankind is man. —Pope.


We live in deeds, not years. —Philip James Bailey.

117. Quod tuum (e)st meum (e)st: omne meum est autem tuum. —Plautus.
What’s mine is yours, and what is yours is mine.

—SHAKESPEARE.

118. Sunt sua praemia laudī.

Virtue is its own reward.

—VIRGIL.

119. Nostra sine auxiliō fugiunt bona.

Occasion, set on wing, flies fast away.

—PROVERB.

119. —OVID.

—MIRROR FOR MAGISTRATES.

120. Urbem quam statuō vestra est.

In Faith and Hope the world will disagree,
But all mankind’s concern is Charity.

—POPE.

121. Hīc exitus illum

Sorte tulit.

The term of life is limited.

—SPENSER.

122. Spērāvimus ista dum fortūna fuit.

God wills, man hopes.

—LOWELL.

123. Illī, quibus invidētur, rem habent.

With fame, in just proportion, envy grows,
The man that makes a character, makes foes.

—YOUNG.

124. Vērus amīcus est is qui tamquam alter īdem.

Friendship is the cement of two minds,
As of one man the soul and body is.

—CICERO.

125. Ipse īgnōtus, egēns, Libyae déserta peragrō.

A stranger in a strange land.

—EXODUS.
126. Nil prôdest quod nôn laedere possit idem. —Ovid.
People may have too much of a good thing.
—John Wolcott.
127. Fidem quî perdit perdere ultrâ nîl potest.
—Syrus.
Take honor from me, and my life is done.
—Shakespeare.
128. Quis genus Aeneadum, quis Trôiae nesciat urbem?
—Virgil.
But there are deeds which should not pass away,
And names that must not wither, though the earth
Forgets her empires with a just decay. —Byron.
129. Si bene quid faciâs, faciâs cito.
—Ausonius.
If it were done, when 'tis done, then 'twere well
It were done quickly.
—Shakespeare.
130. Ne quid nimis.
—Terence.
Moderation is the silken string running through
the pearl chain of all virtues. —Bishop Hall.
131. Facitō aliquid operis, ut semper tē diabolus inveniat occupatūm.
—St. Jerome.
For Satan finds some mischief still
For idle hands to do.
—Isaac Watts.
132. Nêmô ex hoc numerō mihi nôn dônatus abibit.
—Virgil.
See how the world its veterans rewards!
—Pope.
133. Graviôra quaedam sunt remedia periculīs.
—Syrus.
Remedy worse than the disease.
—Beaumont and Fletcher.
134. Quae rês est quae cuinsquam animum in hâc causâ
dubium facere possit?
—Cicero
Our doubts are traitors,
And make us lose the good we oft might win,
By fearing to attempt. —Shakespeare.

135. Minimē sibi quisque nōtus est. —Cicero.
And all our knowledge is ourselves to know.

136. Sua quisque exempla dēbet patī. —Phaedrus.
To each his sufferings.

137. In ūnō quōque virōrum bonōrum habitat deus.
'Tis the divinity that stirs within us. —Seneca.

138. Altissima quaeque flūmina minimō sonō lābuntur.
—Quintius Curtius Rufus.
Smooth runs the water where the brook is deep. —Shakespeare.

139. Quae cūique est cōpia, laetī
Dōna ferunt. —Virgil.
True charity, a plant divinely nurs'd. —Cowper.

140. Quidquid erit superanda omnis fortūna ferendō est. —Virgil.
What fates impose, that men must needs abide.

141. Cuiusvis hominis est errāre. —Cicero.
To err is human.

142. Ab ūnō disce omnēs. —Virgil.
From one, judge all.

143. Adspīrat prīmō fortūna labōrī. —Virgil.
Fortune smiles upon our first effort.

144. Etsī nōn prōsunt singula, iūncta iuvant.
United we stand, divided we fall.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr.</td>
<td>intransitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opp.</td>
<td>opposite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>partciple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refl.</td>
<td>reflexive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st.</td>
<td>stem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr.</td>
<td>transitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>verb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.</td>
<td>with.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

232
VOCABULARY

A

abdicate, abdicō, abdicāre, abdicāvī, abdicātus, w. acc. of personal pronoun and abl. of separation.

ability, ingenium, ingeniī, n.

able, potēns, gen. potentis, adj. and pres. part.; be able, possum, posse, potuī, —.

about, fere, adv. de, prep. w. abl.

circiter, prep. w. ace.

absent, absens, gen. absentis, pres. part.; be absent, absūm, absesse, āfui, āfutūrus.

accompany, comitor, comitāriī, comitātus sum.

accomplish, perficiō, perficere, perfecā, perfectus.

accordingly, itaque, conj. (349–51).

account, ratiō, ratiōnis, f.; on account of, ob, propert, preps. w. acc.; on this account, ob eam rem; quam ob rem; quā de causā; quā ex parte.

accurately, accurātē, adv., magnā cum cūrā (70).

accursed, sacer, sacra, sacrum.

accuse, accusō, accusāre, accusāvī, accusātus.

accustomed, solitus, a, um; be accustomed, soleō, solēre, solitus sum; cōnsueōc, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuevī, cōnsuētus.

Achilles, Achillēs, Achillis, or Achilleos, or Achillī, m.
advise, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.
Aeneas, Aenēās, Aenēae, m.
Aeneid, Aenēīs, Aenēīdis or Aenēīdos, f.
Aequians, Aequīī, Aequōrum, m.
affirm, dīcō, dicere, dīxi, dictus; ad-
firmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī, ad-
firmātus.
afraid, timidus, a, um; be afraid, 
timeō, timēre, timuī, —.
African, Africa, Africae, f.
after, post, prep. w. acc. (60; 74; 246; 
247).
afterwards, posteā, adv.; deinde, adv. 
(304); not long afterwards, paulō 
post.
again, iterum, adv.; again and 
again, semel atque iterum, etiam 
atque etiam.
against, in, contrā, preps. w. acc.
Agamemnon, Agamemnon, Agamem-
nonis, m.
age, aetās, aetātis, f.; age of youth, 
iuventūs, iuventūtis, f.; old age, 
secentūs, secentūtis, f.
agreeable, iūcundus, a, um.
agriculture, agricultūra, agricultūræ, f.
aid, auxilium, auxilii or auxili, n.
Ajax, Aiāx, Aiācis, m.
alarmed, permōtus, a, um; perterri-
tus, a, um.
alert, vigilāns, vigilantis, adj.
Alexander, Alexander, Alexandrī, m.
Alexandria, Alexandrīa, Alexandrīae, f.
all, omnis, omne; ītus, a, um; can-
tus, a, um; universus, a, um.
alliance, sociētēs, sociētātis, f.; foedus, 
foederīs, n. (17).
allied by treaty, foederātus, a, um.
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, Allobrugum, 
m.; acc. pl. Allobrogās.
allow, patior, patī, passus sum; sinō, 
sinere, sīvī, situs; licet, licēre, licuit 
or licitum est (273).
almost, paene, adv.
alone, sōlus, a, um, gen. sōlīus, dat. 
sōlī; unus, a, um, gen. unīus, dat. 
unī.
along, per, prep. w. acc.
Alps, Alpēs, Alpium, f.
already, tam, adv.
also, quoque, adv. (331); et, conj. 
(325); idem, eadem, idem (130).
altar, āra, aarē, f.
although, cum; quamquam; etsi 
(259–266; 74).
always, semper, adv.; numquam nōn 
(298).
Amalthea, Amalēhēa, Amalēhēae, f.
ambassador, légātus, légāti, m.
ambiguous, ambiguus, a, um.
ambrosia, ambrosia, ambrosiae, f.
among, apud, inter, in, preps. w. acc.
amusement (for the sake of), animē 
causā.
ancestors, maiōrēs, um, m.
ancestry (from a long line of), clāris-
simō patre, avō, maiōribus.
Anchises, Anchīsēs, Anchīsae, m.
anient, antēquus, a, um; prīscus, a, 
um.
and, et; atque; — que (324–330).
Andes, Andes, Andīs, m.
anry, irātus, a, um; be angry, 
irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum.
animal, bēstia, bēstiae, f.; animal, 
animalis, n.
animate, incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, 
incitātus.
announce, nuntiō, nuntiare, nuntiāvī, nuntiātus.

another, alius, a, ud, gen. alīus, dat. alīi.

answer, respondēō, respondēre, respondī, responsum; noun, responsum.  

arrive in = come through to, perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus (in w. acc.).

art, ars, artis, f.; art of war, rés militāris (res, reī, f.; militāris, militāre, adj.).

Artemisia, Artemisia, Artemisiae, f.

Asia Minor, Asia, Asiae, f.

ask, rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, w. two accs.; petō, petere, petīvī (petīi), petītus, w. acc. of thing and ab w. abl. of person.

assemble, convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus (tr.); conveniō, convenire, convēnī, conventus (intr.).

assistance, auxilium, auxilii, n.

assume command, imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus.

at first, prīmō (303); at his death, cum mortuus esset; at length, tandem; dēnique; at once, statim; at the same time, eōdem tempore (130); at this time, id temporis, hōc or eō tempore; at times, nōn-
numquam; at work, in opere or
labōrāns; not at all, nihil (55);
at Corinth, 39; at Carthage, 77.
Athenians, Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēn-
sium, m.
Athens, Athēnai, Athēnārum, f.; at
or in Athens, Athēnēs (77).
Atilius, Atīlius, Atīli, m.
attack, aggredior, aggrediō; aggressus
sum; impētem faciō, facere, fēcī,
factus, w. in and the acc.; noun,
impetus, impetūs, m.
attend, comitor, comitārī, comitātus
sum; attend to, cūrō, cūrāre, cū-
rāvī, cūrātus (198).
Attica, Attīca, Attīcae, f.
Atticus, Attīcus, Attīci, m.
augur, augur, augurīs, m.
August, Sextīlis, Sextīle; Augustus,
a, um (353).
Augustus, Augustus, Augustī, m.
antumn, autunnus, autunnī, m.
avarice, avāritia, avāritiae, f.
Avernus, Avernus, Averni, m.
avert, āvertō, avertere, āvertī, āversus.
avoid, vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus.
aware (be), sibi cōnsicus esse with
gen.; I am aware, mihi cōnsicus
sum; you are aware, tibi cōnsicus
es; he is aware, sibi cōnsicus est;
we are aware, nōbīs cōnsicii sumus,
etc.
away (be), absum, absesse, āfuī or
abfuī, āfutūrus or abfutūrus.
ax, secūris, secūris, f.

B

Babylon, Babylōn, Babylōnis, f.
Bacchus, Bacchus, Bacchī, m.

back, tergum, tergī, n.; from the
back, ā tergō.
back, re or red in composition, red
before vowels, before h, and before
do, re in other compounds.
baggage · (of the soldier), sarcinae,
sarcinārum, f.; (of the army), im-
pedimenta, impedimentōrum, n.
bank, ripa, ripae, f.
bar (= hem in), contineō, continere,
continuī, contentus.
barbarian, barbarus, barbarī, m.
barking, lātrātus, lātrātis, m.
battle, pugna, pugnae, f.; proelium,
proelīi, n.; certāmen, certāminis, n.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
beard, barba, barbae, f.
beast, pecus, pecudis, f.; beast of
burden, iūmentum, iūmentī, n.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
beauty, pulchritūdō, pulchritūdinis, f.
because, quod; quia; quoniam; cum
(253-259).
become, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; fiō,
fierī, factus sum.
before, ante, prep. w. acc.; anteā, adv.,
prius, adv.; = in presence of, apud,
prep. w. acc.; of a speech before
the senate, ad with acc. (60; 244,
245).
begin, incipīō, incipere, incēpi, incep-
tus; coepī, coepisse, coepisse sum
begin war, bellum suscipīō, susci-
pere, suscēpi, susceps; begin
battle, proelium committō, com-
mittere, committī, commissus.
beginning, initium, initiī, n.; = first
part of, prīmus, a, um (95).
behind, post, prep. w. acc.; from
behind, ā tergō.
behold, contemplor, contemplāri, contemplātus sum.
believe, crēdō, crēdere, crēdiō, crēdi-
tus.
belong to, sum, esse, fui, futūrus, w. gen.
beneath, sub, prep. w. acc. after a verb of motion, w. abl. after a verb of rest.
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, pro-
futurus; noun, bonum, bonī, n. (49).
besides, praeter, secundum, preps. w. acc.; conj., autem (340).
besiege, oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppug-
nāvi, oppugnātus.
best, opHμuSf, a, um,
better, melior, melius.
Bias, Biās, Biantis, m.
bill (= law), lex, légis, f.
binder, vincō, vincere, vinxi, vincitus;
ligō, ligāre, ligāvi, ligātus; nectō,
nectere, nexuī or nexī, nexus.
Bithynia, Bithynia, Bithyniae, f.
bitter, acerbus, a, um, opp. of mītis, mīte.
black, āter, ātra, ātrum, opp. of albus,
a, um; niger, nigra, nigrum, opp. of candidus, a, um.
blame, culpō, culpāre, culpāvi, cul-
pātus; reprehendō, reprehendere, repre-
hendē, reprehensus.

blood, sanguis, sanguinis, m.; cruor,
cruōris, m.
boat, ship, vessel, nāvis, nāvis, f.;
canoe, linter, lintris, f.; ratis,
ratis, f.
boatman, portitor, portitōris, m.
body, corpus, corporis, n.
bold, audāx, gen. audācis.
book, liber, libri, m.
bookcase, forūlī, forūlōrum, m.
border, limbus, limbī, m.
bordered, praetextus, a, um.
born (be), nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum.
both, ambo, ae, o; uterque, utraque,
utraque (155); both ... and, et ...
et.
bottom of, infimus or imus, a, um (95).

brave, fortis, forte.
bravely, fortiter.
break, frango, frangere, frēgī, frāc-
tus; rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus.
bribe, largior, largīri, largitūs sum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.; bridge a river, in flūmine pontem faciō,
facere, fēcī, factus.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; bring
(1nto a contio), prōdūcō, prōdūcere,
prōdūxī, prōductus; bring about,
efficō, efficere, effēcī, effectus; bring
from, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlatus;
bring an accusation against some one,
aliqüem aliqüid (55) accūsō,
accūsāre, accusāvi, accusātus; bring
or lead to, addūcō, addūcere, addūxī,
adductus.
bronze, aes, aeras, n.
brother, frāter, frābris, m.
Brundisium, Brundisium, Brundissii
or Brundisi, n.
Brutus, Brūtus, Brūtus, m.
build, aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvi,
aedificātus; pōnō, pōnere, posuī,
positus.
building, aedificium, aedificii, n.
burden, onus, oneris, n. (49).
burn, incendō, incendere, incendi,
incēnsus; combūrō, combūrere,
combussi, combūstus.
burning, incēniō, incēnsiōnis, f.
bury, sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivi, sepultus.
business, negōtium, negotii, n.
bustling, celeber, celebris, celebre.
but, sed; autem (337–344).
buy, emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus.
by, ā or ab, prep. w. abl. (315).

C

Caesar, Gāius Iūlius Caesar, gen. Gāi Iūlī Caesaris.
call, vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātus; nō-
minō, nōmināre, nōmināvi, nōmin-
ātus; appellō, appellāre, appellāvi,
apPELLĀtus; call out, clamō, cla-
māre, clamāvi, clamātus; call upon
somebody for something, aliquid ā aliqüo postulō, postulāre, postu-
lāvī, postulātus (56).
calm, tranquilliātus, tranquilliātītis, f.
camp, castra, castrōrum, n.
Campania, Campānīa, Campāniae, f.
Campus Martius, Campus Mārtius, gen. Campī Mārtī, m.
can, possum, posse, potuī,—; I can-
not but think, facere nōn possum
quin putem; you cannot but think,
facere nōn potes quin putes; he
cannot but think, facere nōn potest
quin putet, etc.
capital, caput, capitis, n.
Capitol, Capitōlium, Capitōliī, n.
Capitoline, Capitolīnus, Capitōlinī,
m., or Capitōlium, Capitōliī, n.
Cappadocia, Cappadocia, Cappadociae,
f.
captive, captivus, a, um; captus,
a, um; noun, captivus, captīvī, m.
capture, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.
care, cūra, cūræ, f.; take care of,
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvi, cūrātus; take
care (= be cautious), caveō, ca-
vēre, cāvi, caustus; care a straw,
flocō faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
(34).
carefully, magnā cum cūrā; diili-
genter, accūrāte, advs.
Caria, Cāria, Cāriæ, f.
carry, portō, portāre, portāvi, portā-
tus; ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus; carry
over, trānsportō, trānsportāre, trāns-
portāvī, trānsportātus.
Carthage, Karthāgō, Karthāgīnīs, f.
Carthaginian, Karthāginiēnsis, Kar-
thāgīnīensis, m.
case, rēs, reī, f.; causa, causae, f.
Catiline, Catilīna, Catilīnae, m.
Cato, Catō, Catōnis, m.
cattle, pecus, pecoris, n.; pecus, pecu-
dis, f.
Catulus, Catulūs, Catuli, m.
cause, causa, causae, f.; cūrō, cūrāre,
cūrāvi, cūrātus (198); efficiō, effi-
cere, effecī, effectus, w. ut and subj.
cautious, caustus, a, um.
cavalry, equitātus, equitātītis, m.
celebrate games, lūdōs faciō, facere,
fēcī, factus; celebrate a triumph,
triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī,
triumphātus.
celebrated, clārus, a, um.
celestials, caelestēs, caelestum, m.
censure, reprehendō, reprehendere, re-
prehendi, reprehensus; culpō, cul-
pāre, culpāvi, culpātus.
center, stō, stāre, stetī, status.
tcentury (= one hundred years), ce-
tūm annī (centum indecl.), annus,
te, m.
Ceparius, Cēpārius, Cēpāriī, m.
Cerberus, Cerberus, Cerberī, m.
Ceres, Cerēs, Cererīs, f.
certain, guidam, quaedam, quiddam
or quoddam, indef. pron.; certus, a, um.

Cethegus, Cethēgus, Cethēgi, m.
chain, vinculum, vinculi, n.; catēna,
catēnae, f.

change, occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f.; you have a chance to show, habēs ubi ostendās; by chance, forte, adv.
change, mutō, mutāre, mutāvī, mutātus; change one's mind, animum convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus.

charge with, accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātus (35).

Chief, miraculī, a, um.
Chiefly, maxime, adv.
Chiefly, maxime, adv.
Chiel, dux, ducis, m.
Child, puer, puerī, m.; unus ex liberīs (one of the children).

Children, liberī, liberōrum, m.

Chilo, Child, Child, Child, m.
Choose, faciō, facere, feci, factus; creō,
creāre, creāvī, creātus; legō, legere,
legī, lectus; dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī,
dēlectus.

Cicero, Marcus Tullius Cicero, gen. Marcus Tulli Ciceronis, m.

Cilicia, Cilicia, Ciliciae, f.

Cimon, Cimon, Cimōnis, m.

Cincinnatus, Lucius Quintus Cincinnatus, gen. Luci Quīntī Cincinnāti, m.

Circular, circulāris, circulāre, adj.
Circulate a report, ēnūntiō, ēnuntiāre,
ĕnūntiāvī, ēnūntiātus.

Cisalpine, Cisalpinus, a, um.

Citadel, arx, arcis, f.
Citizen, cīvis, cīvis, m. and f.

City, urbs, urbīs, f.
Civic, cīvīcus, a, um.
Claim, pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, —.
Clashing, sonitus, sonitūs, m.
Class, ordō, ordinis, m.
Claudius, Aplius Claudius, gen. Appi Claudii, m.

Cleobulus, Cleobōlus, Cleobūli, m.
Clever, callidus, a, um.
Client, cliēns, clientis, m. and f.
Cloak, amīctus, amīctūs, m.
Clodius, Clōdius, Clōdi, m.
Coast, óra maritima, gen. órae maritimae, f.

Cohort, cohors, cohortis, f.
Cold, frīgus, frīgoris, n.; extreme cold, frīgora, frīgorum, n. plu.
Collect, cogō, cogere, coēgi, coaectus; colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus.
College (sacred), sanctum collegium, gen. sanctī collegiī, n.
Colonieae, coloniae, coloniārum, f.
Colonist, colonus, colonī, m.
Colony, colonia, coloniae, f.
Column, columna, columnae, f.

Combined, conjunctus, a, um.
Come, venīō, venire, vēnī, ventus; come to one's aid, alicui auxiliō
venīō, venire, vēnī, ventus (49); come about (= happen), sum, esse, fūi, futūrus; fīō, fierī, factus sum.

Coming, adventus, adventūs, m.
Command, imperāre, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus (282); military command (= commission), imperium, imperī, n.

Commander-in-chief, imperātor, imperātoris, m.

Commend, laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus.
commit care of, commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātus.
common, comminis, commūne, adj.
companion, comes, comitis, m. and f.
compel, cōgō, cōgere, coegi, coactus.
complain, queror, querēri, questus sum.
conceal, cēlo, cēlāre, cēlavī, cētātus (56).
condition, condiciō, condicionis, f.; on condition that, sī, dummodo; conditions fulfilled = all things having been done.
confess, cōnfitōr, cōnfitēri, cōnfitussum.
confidence, fidēs, fidei, f.; to have confidence in, cōnfidō, cōnfidere, confīsus sum, with either dat. or abl.; to lose confidence, diffidō, diffidere, diffīsus sum.
conjecture, coniectūra, coniectūrae, f.
connect, inter sē coniungere, coniūngō, coniūngere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus.
conquer, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus; superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus.
conscience, cōnscentia, cōnscentiae, f.; because his conscience troubled him, propter cōnscentiam or abiectus cōnscientiā.
conscripti, cōnscriptū, cōnscriptōrum, m.
consent, cōnsensīo, cōnsensīonis, f.; without one's consent, eō invitō (74).
consider, iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus (278); be considered, habeo, habēri, habitus sum.
consist in or of, sum, esse, fui, futūrus (33).
conspirator, coniūrātus, coniūrāti, m.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.
consular, cōnsulāris, cōnsulāre, adj.
consulship, cōnsulātus, cōnsulātus, m.
consult, cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsulūi, cōnsultus (44).
consummate, summus, a, um.
contain, tenēo, tenēre, tenūi, tenētus; contain the fate = in them is the fate.
contented, aequō animō (72; 2).
contio, cōntiō, cōntiōnis, f.
contract, locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus (198).
contrary to, contrā, prep. with acc.; contrary to the advice of, non monitus,a, um; contrā voluntātem.
convey, inductō, inductere, inductūs, inducere.
convict, damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus.
Corcyra, Corcyrā, Corcyræae, f.
cord, nervus, nervī, m.
Corinth, Corinthus, Corinthī, f.; at or in Corinth, Corinthī (39).
corn, frumentum, frumentī, n.
corrections made, corrēctā, corrigendorum, n.; corrections being made or to be made, corrigenda, corrigendorum, n.
cost, stō, stāre, stetī, status.
Cotta, Mārcus Aurelius Cotta, gen. Mārci Aurelii Cottae, m.
council, concilium, concilīi, n.
countenance, vultus, vultūs, m.
country, ager, agrī, m.; native country, patria, patriae, f.; country (in opposition to city), rūs, rurīs, n.
courage, fortitudō, fortitūdinis, f.; virtūs, virtūtis, f.; animī, animōrum, m.
course, cursus, cursus, m.; of course, quidem; vero (330); in the course of a month, in mense (menses, mensis, m.).
court = kingdom, regnum, regni, n.; in court, in iudicii.
cover, tegō, tegere, tēxi, tectus; cover with troops, cópiis compleō, compleō, compleō, compleō.
crafty, callidus, a, um; tellus, textus, tectus.
crime, scelus, sceleris, n.; fætidium, fætudium.
cross, trānsio, transire, trānsi, trānsitus.
crowd, concursus, concursus, m.; crowd around, circumveniō, circumvēnire, circumvēnī, circumventus.
crowded, celeber, celebris, celebrē.
crown, corōna, corōnae, f.; corōnē, corōnāre, corōnāvī, corōnātus.
cruel, crūdēlis, crūdēle, adj.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis, f.; crūciātus, crūciātus, m.
cultivate, colō, colere, cultūrī, cultūris.
Cumae, Cūmae, Cūmārum, f.; of Cumae, Cūmaeus, a, um.
curia, cūria, cūriāe, f.
custody, custōdia, custōdiae, f.; be in custody, comprēhendor, comprēhendi, comprēhensus sum.
custom, mos, mōris, m.; consuetūdō, consuetūdinis, f.
cut, caedō, caedere, ceēdī, caesus; scindō, scindere, scīdī, scissus; cut into, incādō, inciderē, incēdī, incēsus; cut off from, prohibēō, prohibēre, prohibū, prohibitus, w. abl. of separation.

Cyzicus, Cýzicus, Cýzicē, f.

daily, quotidiē, adv.; in diēs; in singulōs diēs.
danger, periculum, periculī, n.
dangerous, periculōsus, a, um.
dare, audēō, audēre, ausus sum.
daring, audax, audācis, adj.
Darius, Dārius, Dārī, m.
dark-colored, pullus, a, um.
darkness, tenebrae, tenebrārum, f.
date, coepī, coepisse, coequus sum.
deaughter, filia, filiae, f.
day, diēs, diēi, m. or f. in sing., m. in plu.
dead, mortuus, a, um.
dear, cārus, a, um.
dearth, mors, mortis, f.
debt, aēs alienum, gen. aëris alienī, n.
debtor, debitor, debītōris, m.
December, December, Decembris, December.
decide, consītūō, consītūre, consītū, consītūtus; decide = make up one's mind, animum indücō, indūcere, indūxi, inducēs.
declare, dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus; declare war, bellum indicō, indicere, indicē, indictus, w. dat.
decree of the senate, iūdicium senātūs; senātūs consultum; decree of banishment, aquae et ignis interdictō (iūdicium, iūdicīi, n.;
242 ELEMENTARY LATIN WRITING

senátus, senátus, m.; cónsul, cónsuli, n.; aqua, aquae, f.; ignis, ignis, m.; interdictió, interdictiónis, f.).

deed, réx, rei, f.; factum, facti, n.
deep, altus, a, um.
defeat, vincó, vincere, vici, victus; superó, superáre, superávi, superátus.
defend, défendó, défendere, défendi, défensus.
defendant, reus, rei, m.; hic (114).
defify, pró deó coló, colere, colui, cultus (deus, deí, m.).
Delphobé, Déphobé, Déphobés, f.
delay, moror, morári, morátus sum; noun, mora, morae, f.
deliver, trádó, trádere, trádidi, tráditus; deliver an address or oration, óratió nem habó, habère, habui, habitus (óratió, óratiónis, f.); deliver books, librós adferó, adferre, attuli, adlatús (liber, liber, m.).
Delos, Délos, Déli, f.
Delphi, Delphi, Delphórum, m.
demand, postuló, postuláre, postulávi, postulátus; poscó, poscere, popóscí, —; demand in return, repetó, repetere, repeti, repetitus; make many demands, multa postuláre (16).
deny, negó, negáre, negví, negátus; inítió, inítiári, inítiátius sum.
derpend on, cónfidó, cónfirde, cónfísus sum.
deposit, dépóñó, dépóneré, déposuí, aépositus; deposit verses, carmina condó, condere, condidi, conditus (carmen, carminis, n.).
deprive, privó, priváre, privávi, privátus.
deputies, légáti, légátórum, m.
desert, déséró, désérere, déserví, désertus; relinquó, relinquere, reliqui, relictus.
deserve, mereó, merère, meruí, meritus.
desire, cupió, cupere, cupíví, cupitus; requiró, requirere, requisivi, requisitús; cupiditás, cupidítiatis, f.
desirious, cupídus, a, um.
desist from, dèsió, dèsière, dèsti, dèstitus.
despair of, d'spéró, d'spérère, d'spér- rávi, d'spérátus.
desperadoes, viri nèquissimi (vir, viri, m.; nèquissimus, a, um, super. of nèquam, worthless).
destroy, déló, délere, délóvi, délétus; destroy by fire, igni incendó, incendere, incendi, incensus; destroy bridge, pontem interscindó, interscindere, intersciádi, interscissus, or rescindó, rescindere, rescindi, rescissus.
determine, statuó, statuere, statuí, statitúus; cónstituó, cónstituere, cónstituí, cónstitútus.
devote time, tempús súmò, súmere, súmptú, súmptus, w. dat.; tempús tribuó, tribuere, tribuí, tribútus (tempus, temporis, n.).
devour, voró, voráre, vorávi, vorátus.
Diana, Diána, Diánae, f.
dictator, díctátor, díctátoris, m.
dictatorship, díctátiura, díctátiuræ, f.
die, morior, mori, mortuus sum (fut. part. moritúrus, a, um).
differ, dífferó, dífferre, dístulú, dílustus.
different, varius, a, um.
difficult, difficilis, difficile, adj.
difficulty, difficultās, difficultātis, f.;
with difficulty, vix, adv.
dig, effodiō, effodere, effōdī, effossus.
diligently, diligenter, adv.
dine, cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātus;
dine at a friend's house, apud amicum cēnāre.
dining room, cēnātiō, cēnātiōnis, f.
Diomede, Diomèdes, Diomèdis, m.
direction, pars, partis, f.
disappear, ēvānescō, ēvānescere, ēvān-

nit, —.
disappointed, spē dēiectus, a, um
(spēs, speĭ, f.).
disgrace, turpītūdō, turpītūdinis, f.;
dēdecus, dēdecoris, n.
disgraceful, turpis, turpe, adj.
disposition, animus, animī, m.
distinguished, clārus, a, um.
distribute, distribuō, distribuere, dis-
tribui, distribūtus.
district, pars, partis, f.; pāgus, pāgī,
m.
disturbance of mind, animī pertur-
bātiō, perturbātiōnis, f.
ditch, fossa, fossae, f.
divide, dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvī-
sus; distribuō, distribuere, distribui,
distribūtus.
divinely, dīvīnitus, adv.
division, pars, partis, f.
do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; agō,
agere, ēgī, āctus; gerō, gerere, gessī,
gestus; do one's best, operam nāvō,
nāvāre, nāvāvī, nāvātus (173;
178).
Dodona, Dōdōna, Dōdōnae, f.
dog, canis, canis, m. and f. (gen. plu.
canum).
door, iānua, iānuae, f.
doubt, dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f.; du-
bitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus;
there is no doubt that, nōn est
dubium quīn (276).
down, dē, prep. w. abl.; down to,
ad, prep. w. acc.
Draco, Dracō, Dracōnis, m.
drag, trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus;
drag = trail, dēflō, dēfluerē, dē-
flūxī, dēfluxus.
draw up, subdūcō, subdūcere, subdūxī,
subductus.
dress, habitus, habitūs, m.; vestis,
vestis, f.
drink, bibō, bibere, bibī, —; pōtō, pō-
tāre, pōtāvī, pōtātus or pōtus.
drive, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus; drive
out, ēictō, ēicere, ēicī, ēiectus;
drive back, rēiciō, rēicere, rēicī,
rēictus; repellō, repellere, repūlī,
repulsus.
drown, submergō, submergere, sub-
mersē, submersus.
during, per, prep. w. acc.
duty, officium, officiī; it is some
one's duty, alīcuius est (33).
dwelling, domicilium, domiciliī, n.;
locus ac sēdēs (locus, locī, m. in
sing., m. and n. in plu.; sēdēs,
sēdis, f.).
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachium, Dyrra-
chii or Dyrrachi, n.

E
each, quisque, quaeque, quidque, quic-
que or quodque; uterque, utraque,
utraque (155).
eager, appetēns, gen. appetentis, adj.
(90); cupidus, a, um.
eagerly, cupidē, adv.
eagerness, cupiditātis, cupiditātis, f.
early, mātūrē, adv.; in early times,
antiquissimis temporibus (antiquissimus, a, um; tempus, temporis, n.).
easily, facile, adv.
easy, facilis, facile, adj.
edict, edictum, edicti, n.
effect, efficiō, efficere, effecī, effectus; effect a retreat, pedem referō, referre, retuli, relātus (210).
effects, rēs, rērum, f.; bona, bonōrum, n.
Egypt, Aegyptus, Aegyptī, f.
eight, octō, indecl. card. adj.
eighteen, duodevīginī, indecl. card. adj.
elder, senior, adj.; nātū maior.
elect, déligō, déligere, déligī, délectus; creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus; faciō, facere, fecī, factus.
Elis, Elis, Elidis, f.
Elysium, Elysium, Elysī, n.
eminent, summus, a, um; ēregius, a, um; clārūs, a, um.
employ, negotīum dō, dare, dedī, datus (negotium, negotīti, n.).
encircled with laurel, laureātus, a, um.
encounter, adgreēdior, adgreēdī, adgressum sum; without encountering any resistance, nullō impediente (74).
enemy, hostis, hostis, m. and f.; inimicus, inimīcī, m. and f.
enjoy, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, w. abl.; fruor, frūi, frūcis sum, w. abl.
enmity, inimīcitia, inimīcitiae, f.
enough, satis, adv. and indecl. adj.
enter, intrō, intrārē, intrāvī, intrātus; ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum w. prep. intrā and acc.
tertainer, hospes, hospitis, m. and f.
entrance, aditus, aditūs, m.
enumerate, numerō, numerāre, numerāvī, numerātus; percurrō, percurrere, percurri or percurrī, percursum.
envious, invidiōsus, a, um.
envoy, invidia, ae, f.; invadeō, invideō, invīdere, invīdi, invisus, w. dat. (42, 43).
Epaminondas, Epaminōndas, Epaminōndae, m.
Ephialtes, Ephialtēs, Ephialtae, m.
Epirus, Epīrus, Epīrī, f.
equestrian statue, imāgō equitis (imāgō, imāginis, f.; eques, equitis, m.).
equites, equītēs, equitum, m.
Erebus, Erebus, Erebi, m.
erect, pōnō, pōnerē, posui, positus; conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus (198).
Erythrae, Erythrae, Erythrārum, f.; of Erythrae, Erythraeus, a, um.
escape, ēripio, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus with acc. of pers. or refl. pron.; escape notice, lateō, latēre, latuī,—
especially, praesertim, adv.; praeципue, adv.
Etruria, Etrūria, Etrūriæ, f.
Euboea, Euboea, Euboeae, f.
Europe, Eurōpa, Eurōpae, f.
Eurotas, Eurōtās, Eurōtæ, m.
even, etiam, conj. (330); not even, nē . . . quidem (305).
evening, vesper, vesperi, m.; vesper, vesperis, m.; vespera, vesperae, f.
ever = at any time, umquam, adv.; ever = always, semper; adv., numquam nōn (298).
everlasting, sempiternus, a, um; aeternus, a, um.
every, quisque, quaeque, quidque, quicque or quodque, indef. pron.; omnis, omne, adj. (155).
everywhere, omnibus in partibus; ubique, adv.; vulgo, adv.
evidence, indicium, indicii, n.

effectively, ipse, a, um, intens. pron. (128).
excel, praecedō, praecedere, praecessi, praecessus, w. acc.; praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus, w. dat.
except, praeter, prep. w. acc.
exceptional, egregius, a, um; singularis, singularāre.
exceptually, egregie, adv.
exclaim, clāmitō, clāmitāre, clāmitāvī, clāmitātus.

excite, excūsō, excūsāre, excūsāvī, excūsātus; they excused themselves for coming, sē excūsābant quod vēnissent.

exhibit, ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus.
exhort, cohōtor, cohōtārī, cohōtātus sum.
exile, in exilium ēiciō, ēicere, ēicē, ēiectus (exsilium, exsilii, n.); an

expedient, commodus, a, um; optimus, a, um.

expel, expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus.

experience, īsus, īsīs, m.
exploits, rēs gestae, f. (rēs, rērum, f.; gestī, ae, a).
explain, pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, pertentus.
extraordinary, singularis, singularāre; egregius, a, um.

eye-witness, spectātor et testis (18) (spectātor, spectātōris, m. and f.; testis, testis, m. and f.).

F

Fabius, Fabius, Fabī, m.
face, factēs, faciēi, f.; vultus, vultūs, m.; ōs, ōris, n.

fact, rēs, reī, f.; in fact, rē; facts in the case, rēs ipsae, gen., rērum ipsārum.

Faesulae, Faesulae, Faesulārum, f.

faithful, fidēlis, fidēle; fidus, a, um.
faithfully, fidēliter, adv.; diligenter, adv.

fall, cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsus; fall = drop, defluō, defluere, deflūxi, defluxus.
famous, clārus, a, um; ille, a, ud, demons. pron. (120).

far, longē, adv. (94).
farm, praedium, praedīi, n.
farmer, agricola, agricolae, m.; farmer of revenue, publicānus, publicāni, m.

fasces, fascēs, fascium, m.
father, pater, patris, m.

fatherly, patrius, a, um.
favor, beneficium, beneficiī, n.; favor = approve of, probō, probāre, probavi, probātus; favor = support, favēo, favere, favī, fautus, w. dat.

favorable, opportūnus, a, um; idoneus, a, um.

favorite = one especially loved, praecipue dīlectus (praecipue, adv.; dīlectus, perf. part. of diligēre, diligere, dīlecti, dīlectus).

fear, timor, timōris, m.; metus, metūs, m.; timeō, timēre, timui, —;
metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus; vereor, verērī, veritus sum.

fearlessly, fortiter, adv.

fearlessness, fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.

feast, epulōr, epulāri, epulātus sum, w. abl.; epulum, epuli, sing. n.; epulae, epulārum, plu. f.; comīs- sātiō, comissātiōnis, f.; convōvium, convōvī, n.

feel = think, sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus; feel friendly, bonō animō sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; feel grate- ful, grātiam habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus; feel pity, miseret, mise- rēre, miseruit, — (37); feel sorry, paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, — (37); feel sure, scīō, scīre, scīvi, scītus; nōn dubitō, dubitāre, dubi- tāvi, dubitātus.

Felix, Fēlix, Fēlicis, m.

ferry, cymba subvectō, subvectāre, sub- vectāvī, subvectātus (cymba, cymbae, f.); lintre trānsportō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātus (linter, lintris, f.).

fetters, catēnae, catēnārum, f.; com- pedēs, compedum, m. and f.

few, paucī, ae, a; very few, per- paucī, ae, a.

fidelity, fidēlitās, fidēlitātis, f.

field, ager, agrī, m.

fiercely, àcritēr, adv.

fifteen, quīndecim, indecl. card. adj.

fifth, quintus, a, um.

fifty, quīnquāgintā, indecl. card. adj.

fight, pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pug- nātus; proelior, proeliārī, proelīa- tūs sum.

file = go one by one, singuli, ae, a, eō, īre, ī, ītus.

fill with, compleō, complēre, complēvī, compleūtus.

finally, dēnique (304).

find, inveniō, invenire, invenī, inven- tus; reperīō, reperīre, repperī, reper- tus; find out, cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

finish, finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītus; cōnfiō, cōnfiicere, cōnfēcī, cōnfactus; perficiō, perfiicere, perfecī, perfectus; give finishing touches, manūs ex- trēmās impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus.

fire, ignis, ignis, m.

firm, cōnstituō, gen. cōnstitūtis, adj.

first, prīmus, a, um; ānus, a, um (84); at first, prīmō.

fitted, aptus, a, um; accommodātus, a, um.

five, quīnque, indecl. card. adj.

fix, fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus.

flame, flamma, flammæ, f.

Flaminian Way, Flāminia via, gen. Flāminiae viae, f.

flee, fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitus.

fleet, classis, classis, f.

flourish, floreo, florēre, florēvī, —.

flow, fluō, fluere, fluīxi, fluxus.

flower, flōs, flōris, m.

fold of a toga, sinus, sinūs, m.

follow, sequor, sequi, secūtus sum; as follows, hoc (112).

following, sequēns, gen. sequentis, pres. part.; on the following day, posterō diē; proximō diē; postridēe eius diēi.

fond of, cupidus, a, um; studiōsus, a, um; be fond of, amō, amāre, amā- vī, amātus; diligō, diligere, dilēxi, dilēctus.

foolish, stultus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.; on foot, pedibus; foot of = lowest part of, ĭmus, a, um.

foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, m.

for, prō, prep. w. abl. (314); enim, conj. (344–348).

forbid, vertō, vertäre, verētu, vetitus.

force, vis, vis, f.; cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, coāctus; pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus;

force one’s way, per vim iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.

forces, cōpiae, cōpiārum, f.

foreign, aliēnus, a, um; peregrīnus, a, um.

foreigners, exterī, exterōrum, m. and f.; peregrīnī, peregrīnōrum, m. and f.

forest, silva, silvae, f.

forget, oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblītus sum.

forgive, condōmō, condōnāre, cōndō-nāvī, condōnātus; ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus.

form, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; form

a plan, cōnsilium inēo, inīre, inī, initus (cōnsilium, cōnsiliē, n.).

former, prior, prius.

Formiae, Formiae, Formiārum, f.

forsoake, relīnquo, relīnquere, relīquī, relīctus; désērō, désērere, désēruī, désērūs.

fortieth, quadrāgēsimus, a, um.

fortify, mūniō, mūniēre, mūniī, mūnītus: most strongly fortified, mūnītissimus, a, um.

fortunate, fortūnātus, a, um; beātus, a, um; fēlix, gen. fēlicis.

fortunes, rēs, rērum, f.; bona, bonō-rum, n.

forty-ninth, ānđēquīnquāgēsimus, a, um.

Forum, forum, forī, n.

found, condō, condere, condidi, condītus.

four, quattuor, indecl. card. adj.

four hundred, quadringenti, ae, a.

fourteen, quattuoordecim, indecl. card. adj.

fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum; liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus; free
(from debt), dissolvō, dissolvere, dissolvī, dissolvētus.

frequented, celeber, celebris, celebre; much frequented, celeberrimus, a, um.

frequently, saepe, adv.

friend, amicus, amīcī, m. and f.

friendship, amīcitia, amīcitiae, f.

frighten, terreō, terrere, terrī, territus.

frightful, perhorrendus, a, um.

from, ā, ab, dē, ē, ex, prep. w. abl. (318).

frost, pruīna, pruīnae, f.

full, plēnus, a, um; complētus, a, um;

full = loose, laxus, a, um.

Furies, furiae, furiarum, f.

furthermore, autem (340).

future, futūrus, a, um.

G

Gabinus, Aulus Gabīnius, gen. Auli Gabini, m.

gain, vincō, vincere, viēti, victus; gain

possession of, potior, potīri, potitus

sum (79).

Gallic, Gallicus, a, um.

game, lūdus, lūdi, m.

garden, hortus, hortī, m.; nemus, nemorīs, n.

garland, sertum, serti, n.

gate, porta, portae, f.
pelleter, gaudere, vice, donum, aureus, mune-

abitus, abii, redi, retus; go, cum, descendere, a,

imperdtor, f.);

tridus, deditus, cum; surrender, a,

groan, guard, Greek, groups

ground, grieve

greek, Graecus, Graecorum, m.

greece, Graecia, Graeciae, f.

Grow, grow, grow

grove, grove

groups of statuary, imagnes, imagni-

num, f.; statute, statuum, f.

grove, grove

guard, custos, custodes, m.; praesidium,

praetoris, m.

guard, custos, custodes, m.; praesidium,

praetorificus, f.

grace, gusto, gusti, gustus, m.

guide, dux, ducis, m. and f.; under

some one's guidance, aliquo duce

scensus; go out, exeo, exire, exit,
exitus; go on, geror, geri, gestus

sum.

god, deus, dei, m.; gods of the lower

world, inferi, inferorum, m.

goddess, dea, deae, f.

golden, aureus, a, um.

good-by, God bless you, amä näs et

valē et salvē.

goodness, bonitās, bonitātis, f.

goods, bona, bonorum, n.; res, re-

rum, f.

govern, regō, regere, rēx, rēctus.

governor, propraetor, propraetoris, m.

grain, frumentum, frumenti, n.

granary, frumentarium subsidium,

gen. frumentārii subsidii, n.

grandfather, avus, avi, m.

grant permission, concedō, concedere,

concessi, concessus.

great, magnus, a, um; as great as,
tantus, a, um . . . quantus, a, um.

Grecians, Graeci, Graecorum, m.

Greece, Graecia, Graeciae, f.

Greek, Graecus, a, um.

grieve at, doleō, dolere, dolui, — (59).
groan, gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitus.

ground, solum, soli, n.; on the ground,
humi (76).

groups of statuary, imagnes, imagni-

num, f.; statute, statuum, f.

grove, grove

guard, custos, custodes, m.; praesidium,

praetorio cohors, gen. praetoriae

cohortis, f.

guest, hospes, hospitis, m. and f.

guide, dux, ducis, m. and f.; under
(74); for the guidance of the boat, quō cymbam subигat (206); subигo, subигere, subйгй, subāctus.
guilty, culпдans, a, um; not guilty, innocę̆s, gen. innocentis, adj.

H

Halicarnassus, Halicarnassus, Halicarnassī, f.
hand, manus, manūs, f.; on the other hand, autem (340).
handsome, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrĭ.
hang, dissideō, dissidere, dissē̆di, dissequus.
Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibalīs, m.
happen, fiō, fieri, factus sum; contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus; accidō, accidere, accidī, —.
happy, fēlix, gen. fēlicis, adj.; beātus, a, um.
harbor, portus, portūs, m.
hard, difficilis, difficile.
harm, dētrimentum, dētrimentī, n.; noceō, nocere, nocū, nocitus (43).
harvest, seges, segetis, f.
hasten, contendō, contendere, contēndi, contentus; mātūrō, mātūra- re, mātūrāvī, mātūrātus; properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus.
hate, ōdi, ōdisse.
hatred, ōdĭum, ōdĭ, n. (49).
haughtily, superstā; rather haughtily, superstās (88).
have, habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus;
have rights of citizens, cīvium tūra teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (iūs, iūris, n.; cīvis, cīvis, m.);
have much power, multum possum, posse, potuī, —; multum valeō, valēre, valui, —; have faith

in, cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum; fidem habēre, w. dat.; you have an opportunity to show, habēs uī ostentēs.
he, is; hīc; ille, demons. pron.
head, caput, capitis, n.
hear, audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus.
hearsay, auditīō, auditīōnis, f.; “hearsay is no evidence,” fictī audītīōnibus nōn crēdendum est.
heart, cor, cordis, n.; heart of the city, media urbs, gen. mediae urbis, f. (95).
hearth, focus, foci, m.
heaven, caelum, caelī, n.
heavy, gravīs, grave.
Hebe, Hēbē, Hēbēs, f.
Hector, Hector, Hectorīs, m.
height, altitūdō, altitūdinīs, f.
Helen, Helena, Helenae, f.
Hellespont, Hellēspontus, Hellēspontī, m.
help, auxilium, auxiliī, n. (49).
her, her own, suus, a, um, poss. pron. referring to the subject, but agreeing with the object possessed; eius, huius, or illius may be used to express her not referring to the subject; her, a direct object, is to be expressed by the accusative, eam, hanc, or illam.
Heraclea, Hēracleā, Hēracleae, f.
Hercules, Herculēs, Herculīs, m.
here, hic, adv.; in hōc locō.
hero, vir, virī, m.; hērōs, hērōis, m.
Herodotus, Hērodotus, Hērodotī, m.
heroism, fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. (20).
hesitate, dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus.
hesitation, dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f.; recūsātiō, recūsātiōnis, f.
high, altus, a, um; it’s high time, tandem aliquandō.
highly, altē, adv.; magnē, adj. (34).
hill, collis, collis, m.
himself, ipse, intens. pron.; sē, reflex. pron.
Hipparchus, Hipparchus, Hipparchē, m.
Hippias, Hippiās, Hippiae, m.

his, his own, suus, a, um, poss. pron. referring to the subject, but agreeing with the object possessed; eius, huius, or illius may be used to express his, not referring to the subject.
historian, rērum gestārum scripтор (rēs, reī, f.; gestus, a, um; scripтор, scripторis, m.).
hold, teneō, tenere, tennū, tentus; sustineō, sustinēre, sustinūs, sustentūs.
holy, sanctus, a, um.
home, domus, domūs, f.; at home, domī (76); from home, domō (76).
homesickness, suōrum désiderium, aësiderii, n.
honesty, probitās, probitātis, f.
honor, honor, honōris, m.; pudor, pudōris, m.; deus, decoris, n.; in honor of, honōris causā (29); treat with honor or respect, summō homōre adficiō, adficiere, adfēcē, adfectus.
horse, equus, equē, m.
horseman, eques, equitis, m.
Hortensius, Hortēnsius, Hortēnsi, m.
host, hospes, hospitēs, m.
hostage, obses, obstidis, m.

I

hostile, inimicus, a, um.
house, domus, domūs, f.; domicilium, domicilīi, n.
how, quō modo? quem ad modum?
how many, quot? quam multi, ae, a?
how hard, quam difficilis, difficult?
however, autem (340).
humanity, hūmānitās, hūmānitatis, f.
hundred, centum, indecl. card. adj.
hundredth, centēsimus, a, um.
husband, coniūnx, coniugis, m.; maritus, mariī, m.
hurl, déiciō, déicere, déiciā, déictus; contorqueō, contorqueōre, contorsī, contortus.
hut, casa, casae, f.

ice, glaciēs, glaciēi, f.
Ida, Möns Ída, gen. montis Ídae (mōns, m.; Ída, f.).
ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
illustrious, clārus, a, um; illustrious warrior, perītissimus rei militāris (militāris, militare).
imagine, putō, putāre, putāvi, putātus.
immediately, statim; protinus; consūdestim.
mind, ingēns, gen. ingentis, adj.; immānis, immāne; maximus, a, um.
immortal, immortālis, immortāle.
impending = threatening, mināns, minantis, pres. part.; impendēns impendentis, pres. part.
imperator, imperātor, imperātōris, m.
implore, implōrō, implōrāre, implorāvī, implorātus.
importance (of great), magni (34; 38).

important, magnus, a, um.

impose, impōnō, impōnere, imposui, impositus.

imprisonment for life, vincula et ea sempiterna (vinculum, vinculi, n.; is, ea, id; sempiternus, a, um).

in, in, prep. w. abl. (319).

incense, tūs, tūris, n.

increase, augeō, augere, auxī, auctus, trans.; crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, intrans.

incredible, incrēdibilis, incrēdibile.

indicate, indicō, indicāre, indicāvī, indicātus; doceō, docēre, dociū, doctus.

indispensable, necessārius, a, um.

Indus, Indus, Indi, m.

inevitable, nōn vitandus, a, um.

infantry, peditēs, peditum, m.; peditātus, peditātus, m.

inferior, inferior, inferius.

influence, auctōriātis, auctōriātis; addīciō, addiūcere, addiīxi, addiuctus; permoveō, permovēre, permōvēi, permōtus.

influential, potentiissimus, a, um; be exceedingly influential, plārium possum, posse, potui, —; plārium valeō, valēre, valui, —.

inform, aliquem certiōrem faciō, facere, feci, factus.

inhabit, incolō, incolere, incolui, —.

inhabitant, incola, incolae, m. and f.; oppidānus, oppidāni, m. and f.

injury, iniūria, iniūriae, f.

innocent, innocēns, innocentis, adj.

inquire, quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesitus.

inscribe, inscribō, inscribere, inscrīpsi, inscriptus.

insolently, arroganter, adv.; superbē, adv.

institute, instituō, instituere, institūti, institūtus.

intellect, mēns, mentis, f.; ingenium, ingenīi, n.

intend, esse in animō, w. dat. of possessor; some one intends to go, alicui est in animō ire; aliquis itūrus est.

interests, rēs, rērum, f.

interview, conloquium, conloquii, n.

into, in, prep. w. acc.

intrust (the defense), trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus (198).

invade, invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus.

invite, invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātus.

island, insula, insulae, f.

it, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc; ille, illa, illud.

Italica, Italica, Italicae, f.

Italy, Italia, Italiae, f.

its, suus, a, um, poss. pron. referring to the subject but agreeing with the object possessed; eius, huius, or illius may be used to translate its not referring to the subject.

jealousy, invidia, invidiae, f.

jokingly, ridiculē, adv.

Juba, Ḫabā, Ḫabae, m.

judge, iūdex, iūdicis, m. and f.

Julius Caesar, Gāius Iūlius Caesar, gen. Gāī Iūlī Caesarīs, m.

July, Quintūlis, e; Iūlius, a, um (353).
Juno, Iūnō, Iūnōnis, f.
Jupiter, Iūpiter, Iovis, m.

K
keep back or from, prohibēō, prohibēre, prohibūi, prohibitus; keep in
mind, memorīā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus; keep saying, dictūō, dicti-
tāre, dictāvī, dictātus; keep one's promise = do that which
one promises that he will do (185).

kill, interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus; occidō, occidere, occi-
dī, occidus.

kind, genus, generis, n.; benignus, a, um; kinds of torture, exempla
crucīātūsque (18); what kind of?
quālis, quāle? adj.; quī, quae, quod? inter. pron.

kindly disposed, bonō animō (72. 2).
kindness, beneficiām, beneficiī, n. (20).

king, rēx, rēgis, m.

leader, dux, ducis, m. and f.; princeps, principis, m. and f.

leaf, foliūm, folii, n.

learn, discō, discere, didīcī, —; cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognītus.
learned, doctus, a, um; eruāitūs, a, um.

leave, relinquūō, relinquuere, relinquī, relictus; exēō, exire, exitī, exitus;
discēdō, discēdere, discēssī, discessus; leave in some one's charge, trādō,
trādere, trādīdī, trāditus; commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātus.
left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.
legion, legiō, legōnis, f.
leisure, oūtum, oūtī, n.
Lemnos, Lemnus or Lemnos, Lemnī, f.
length, longitūdō, longitūdinis, f.
Lentulus, Lentulus, Lentuli, m.
Leonidas, Lēonidas, Lēonidae, m.
less, minor, minus (92).
let, sinō; sīnere, sīvī, situs (273).
Lethe (of), Lēthaeus, a, um.
letters, litterae, litterārum, f.; epistolae, epistolarum, f.
levy, cōnscribō, cōnscribere, cōnscripsī, cōnscripĭtus.
liberate, liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus.
life, vita, vitae, f.
light, lux, lūcis, f.
like, similis, simile (often used with gen. to express likeness in character; with dat. to express likeness in appearance).
likewise, item, adv.; idem, eadem, idem, pron. of identity (130).
listen to, audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus.
litter, lectica, lecticae, f.
little, parvus, a, um; a little while after, paulō post (60).
live, vivō, vivere, vīxi, vīctus; live in, incolō, incolere, incolūi, —.
living, vivus, a, um.
load, onus, oneris, n.
lofty, altus, a, um; ingēns, gen. ingentis, adj.
long, longus, a, um; diū, adv.; as long as, quam diū; how long?
quam diū? so long, tam diū; not long after, paulō post (60).
look for, petō, petere, petīvī (petii), petitus; look on, inspectō, inspectāre, inspectāvī, inspectātus; look upon = consider, habēo, habēre, habui, habitus.
loose, laxus, a, um.
loosen, solvō, solvere, solū, solūtus.
lose, amittō, amittere, amīsī, amissus; perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus; lose confidence, diffidō, diffidere, diffissus sum; lose = be killed, interficior, interfici, interficēt sum.
love, amor, amōris, m.; amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus; diligō, diligere, dilēxi, dilēctus.
lovely, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
low, humilis, humilis, adj.; low price, parvum pretium, gen. parvi pretiī, n.
lower world, Orcus, Orcī, m.; Plūtonis régna (Plūtō, Plūtonis, m.; régnum, régni, n.).
loyal, amantissimus, a, um.
loyalty, studium, studiī, n.
Lucullus, Lūcullus, Lūcullī, m.
lull, lēniō, lēnire, lēnīvī, lēnītus; lull to sleep, efficiō, efficere, effeci, effectus ut w. subj. of dormiō, dormire, dormīvō, dormitus.
lyre, cithara, citharae, f.

M
Macedon, Macedonia, Macedoniae, f.
Maecenas, Maecenas, Maecenātis, m.
magistrate, magistrātus, magistrātūs, m.
magnificent, magnificus, a, um; splendidus, a, um.
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; be made, fīō, fieri, factus sum; make a vow, voveō, vovere, vōvē, vōitus; make a great mistake, vehementer errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus; make a speech, ὀράτιον ἔχεω, ἔχεε, ἔχε εὐτός; make a decree, δέκαρμο, δέκαρμε, δέκαμε, δέκαμο, δέκαμος; make up one’s mind, animum indūco, indúcere, indūxi, inductus; make one’s escape, éripio, éripere, éripui, éreptus, with acc. of pers. or reflex. pron.; make use of, útor, útī, úsus sum; fruor, frūi, frūctus sum; make so many statements, tot verba faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; make a place resound, locum personō, personāre, personuī, personitus.

man, homō, hominis, m.; vir, virī, m.
manage, administrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātus.

Manlius, Manlius, Manliī, m.
Mantua, Mantua, Mantuae, f.
many, multī, ae, a; as many as, tot ...quot; tam multī, ae, a... quam multī, ae, a; how many? quot? quam multī, ae, a?

Marathon, Marathon, Marathōnis, f. (acc. Marathōna); of Marathon, Marathōnium, a, um.
marble, marmor, marmoris, n.
March, Mārtius, a, um (353).
march, iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; signa inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus; prōgreōdīor, prōgregō, progressus sum.
Marcus, Mārcus, Mārcī, m.
Marius, Gāius Marius, gen. Gāi Mariī, m.
market day, nundina, nundinae, f.

Marmarium, Marmarium, Marmarī, n.
Mars, Mārs, Mārtis, m.
Marsic, Marsicus, a, um.
Massilia, Massilia, Massiliae, f.
master (of slaves), dominus, dominī, m.; master of horse, magister equitum (magister, magistrī, m.; eques, equitis, m.).
matron, māter, mātris; mātrōna, mātrōnae, f.
matter, rēs, reī, f.
Mausoleum, Mausoleum, Mausolēi, n.
Mausolus, Mausōlus, Mausōli, m.
May, Māius, a, um.
may = be permitted, licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est (273).
means, facultās, facultātis, f.; pecūnia, pecūniae, f.; rēs, reī, f.; by all means, sānē, adv.; by no means, minimē, adv.; what does it mean? quid sibi vult? he means to go = he intends to go, ei est in animō ire; itūrus est.
meanwhile, interēs, adv.
measure, rēs, reī, f.; metior, metīri, mēnsus sum; in some measure, aliquam in partem.
meet, in aliquid incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsus; conveniō, convenire, convēnī, conventus.
memory, memoria, memoriae, f.
Menelaus, Menelāus, Menelāi, m.
mention, nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nominātus; commemorō, commemorāre, commemorāvī, commemorātus.
Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, m.
mercy, misericordia, misericordiae, f.
mere, ipse, a, um, intens. pron. (128).
Mesopotamia, Mesopotamia, Mesopotamiae, f.
messenger, nūntius, nūntii, m. and f.
middle of, medius, a, um.
midnight, media nox, gen. mediae noctis, f.
mighty, maximus, a, um; validus, a, um; ingēns, ingentis; mighty
in stature = of immense size of body, ingenti corporis magnitūdine.
mild, lenīs, lēne, opp. to vehemens, gen. vehementis; mitis, mite, opp.
to acerbus, a, um.
mile, mille passus or passuum (87).
millionaire, opulentus homō (opulentus, a, um; homō, hominis, m.).
Milo, Milō, Milonis, m.
Miltiades, Miltiades, Miltiadis, m.
mindful, memor, gen. memoris, adj.
Minerva, Minerva, Minervae, f.
Minores, Minōs, Minōs, m.
Minucius, Minucius, Minuci, m.
mistake, errō, errāre, errāvi, errātus.
Mithridates, Mithridātēs, Mithridātis, m.
monarch, rēx, rēgis, m.; I am mon-
arch of all I survey, rērum potior
(79).
money, pecūnia, pecūniæ, f.
month, mēnsis, mēnis, m.
monument, monumentum, monu-
mentī, n.
moon, lūna, lūnae, f.
more, plūs, gen. plūris; magis, adv.
(91).
mother, māter, mātris, f.
mount, ascendō, ascendere, ascendi,
ascensus.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
mourn, dolēō, dolēre, doluī, dolitus;
wear mourning, lūgeō, lūgere,
lūxi, lūctus.
mouth, ōs, ōris, n.
move, movēō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus; move back (into a house), remigrō,
remigrāre, remigrāvī, remigrātus.
much, multus, a, um.
multitude, multitudō, multitūdinis, f.
Mulvian, Mulvius, a, um.
municipia, mūnicipia, mūnicipiō-
rum, n.
murder, necō, necāre, necāvi, necātus.
Murena, Murēna, Murēnae, m.
murmur (of approval), admurmu-
rātiō, admurmurātiōnis, f.
Muses, Mūsae, Musārum, f.
myrtle, myrōs, myrī, f.; myrōs,
myrtīs, f.

N
name, nōmen, nōminis, n.
Naples, Neāpolis, Neāpolis, f.
narrow, angustus, a, um.
nation, nātiō, nātīonis, f.; ġēns, gen-
tis, f.
naturally, nātūrā (abl. of nātūra).
nature, nātūra, nātūrarum, f.

near, ad, prep. w. acc.; be near at
hand, instō, instāre, instīfī, instātus.
nectar, nectar, nectaris, n.
need, opus, indecl. noun; there is
need of, opus est, w. abl.; need we
say? dicāmus?
neither ... nor, neque or nec ... neque.
Neptune, Neptūnus, Neptūni, m.
never, numquam, adv.
new, novus, a, um (16; 158).
Nexi, Nexī, Nexōrum, m.
next, proximus, a, um; next day =
on the next day, posterō diē; proxīmō diē; posthīdiē eius diēi.
Nicomedes, ἁλικομέδες, Ὀικομέδις, m.
night, nox, noctis, f.; at night, noctū; night and day, noctēs die- 
que (52); in the dead of night, medīa nocte.
nine, novem, indecl. card. adj.
nine hundred, nōgentī, ae, a.
no, nūlūs, a, um; no one, nēmō, 
gen. nūlīus; no longer, nōn 
diūtius.
noble, nōbilis, nōble, adj.; of noble 
birth, nōbili locō.
nobles, nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f.; nō-
bilēs, nōbilium, m.
not, nōn (292–300); not even, nē . . . 
guidem (305); not only . . . but 
also, nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam (343); 
not at all, nihil (55).
nothing, nihil, indecl. noun.
notice, animadvertē, animadvertere, 
animadvertē, animadversus; sentiō, 
serēre, sēnsī, sēnsus.
notwithstanding, tamen (342); not-
withstanding their objections, his 
repugnantibus (74).
November, November, Novembris, 
Novembre (353).
now, iam, adv.; nunc, adv.; hoc tem-
pore; Quid? Quid est (163).
nowadays, his temporibus; his diēbus 
(78).
Nox, Nox, Noctis, f.
number, numerus, numerī, m.

O
oak, quercus, quercūs, f.; crown of 
oak leaves, corōna facta e fronde 
quernā.
obaerātī, obaerātī, obaerātōrum, m.
obedience, obtemperātiō, obtemperā-
tiōnis, f.

obey, pāreō, pāreō, pārui, pāritus.
obolus, obolus, oboli, m.
obstacle, impedimentum, impedi-
mentī, n. (49).
obtain security, vindicem or exprō-
missōrem reperīō, reperīre, reperti,
repartus; obtain right of citizen-
ship, iūra teneō, tenēre, tenuī,
tentus.
ocasion, tempus, temporis, n.; causa, 
causa, f.; occasiō, occasiōnis, f.
ocasionally, nōnumquam, adv.
occupied (be), versor, versāri, versā-
tus sum.
Octavianus, Octāviānus, Octāviānī, m.
October, Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre 
(353).
office, officium, officī, n.; cūra, cūrae, 
f.; his office is, ei cūrae est (49).
often, saepe, adv.
oil, oleum, oleī, n.
old, vetus, gen. veteris, adj.; antiquus, 
a, um.
Olympia, Olympia, Olympiae, f.
Olympus, Olympus, Olympī, m.
on, in, prep. w. acc. and abl. (321); 
on this side of, cis, prep. w. acc.
one, semel, adv.; at once, statim, 
adv.; once in a while, nōnum-
quam, adv.; once upon a time, 
quondam, adv.
one, ānus, a, um (81–83), gen. ānīs, 
dat. ānī.
only, sōlus, a, um; gen. sōlius, dat. 
sōli.
open, aperiō, aperīre, aperui̇, apertus.
openly, apertē, adv.; palam, adv.
opinion, sententia, sententiae, f.
Oppius, Oppius, Oppī, m.
opportunity, occasiō, occasiōnis, f.; 
facultās, facultātis, f.
oppose, reclamō, reclamāre, reclamāvī, reclamātus; repugnō, repugnāre, repugnāvī, repugnātus; oppose a law, obtrectō, obtrectāre, obtrectāvī, obtrectātus; oppose (an advance), prohibēō, prohibēre, prohibuīt, prohibītus (275).
opposite, adversus, a, um; contrā, prep. w. acc.
or, aut; vel (164; 165; 171; 332-337); or rather, vel potius.
oracle, ōrāculum, ōrāculi, n.
order, inubeō, inuère, iussī, iussus (282); noun, iussus, tussūs, m.; imperātum, imperātī, n.
ordinary, mediocris, mediocre; no ordinary man, haud mediocris vir.
ornament, ōrnamentum, ōrnamenti, n.
Orpheus, Orpheus, Orphēi, m.
other, alter, a, ud; gen. aliūs, dat. alīī; the other, alter, altera, alterum.
ought = owe, dēbeō, aebère, dēbuī, dēbitus (273).
our, noster, nostra, nostrum, poss. pron. agreeing w. object possessed.
out of, è or ex, prep. w. abl.
over, per, prep. w. acc.; trāns, prep. w. acc.; suprā, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. acc. or abl.
overlook = see over, cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspēxiō, cōnspēctus.
overrun, percurrō, percurrere, percurriō, percurrūs.
overtake, cōnsequor, cōnsequē, consecūtus sum.

P

palace, palātium, palātīi, n.
Palatine, Palātium, Palātīi, n.; Palātīnus, a, um.

paludamentum, palūdamentum, palūdamentī, n.
panic-stricken, perterritus, a, um.
paralyze, obstupefaciō, obstupefacere, obstupefēcī, obstupefactus.
pardon, condōnō, condōnāre, condōnāvī, condōnātus; ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōō, ignōtus.
Parian, Parius, a, um; Parian marble, Parius lapsis, gen. Parii lapsidis, m.
Paris, Paris, Paradis, m.
park, nemus, nemoris, n.
part, pars, partis, f.; on his part, ipse, intens. pron. (128).
participant, particeps, participis, m. and f.
party, factō, factōnis, f.; one party, the other party, alterī . . . alterī (83).
pass, saltus, saltūs, m.; pass judgment, iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus; pass (a law), dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus.
past, praeter, prep. w. acc.; the past, praeterita, praeteritorum, n.
path, via, viae, f.; semita, semitae, f.
patres, patrēs, patrum, m.
patricians, patricii, patriciorum, m.
patron, patrōnus, patrōnī, m.
Paulus Aemilius, Paulus Aemilius, gen. Pauli Aemili, m.
pay, pendō, pendere, pendēdī, pensus.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.; peaceful state of affairs, tranquillītās, tranquillilitātis, f.
peaceable, lēnis, lēne, adj.; plācābilis, plācābile, adj.
Peloponnesus, Peloponnēsus, Peloponnesi, f.
people, populus, populi, m.; plēbs, plēbis, f.; plēbēs, plēbēi, f.
perfect, polīo, polīre, polīvī, politus.
perhaps, fortāsse, adv.
Periander, Periander, Periandri, m.
Pericles, Periclis, Periclis, m.
perpetual, aeternus, a, um; per-
petuus, a, um; semipernus, a, um.
perseverance, adsiduitās, adsidui-
tātis, f.
Persian, Persicus, a, um.
Persians, Persae, Persārum, m.
personally conduct, ipse düōc, düere,
düxi, ductus (128).
persuade, persuadeō, persuadēre, per-
svāsī, persuasūs.
Philip, Philippus, Philippī, m.
Phocis, Phocis, Phōcidis, f.
Phrygia, Phrygia, Phrygiae, f.
pillar, columna, columnae, f.
Pindar, Pindarūs, Pindarī, m.
pius, pius, a, um.
pipe, tubus, tubi, m.
pirate, praedō, praedonis, m.
Pisa, Pisa, Piserum, f.
Pisistratus, Pisistratus, Pisistrati, m.
Pittacus, Pittacus or Pittacos, Pit-
tacī, m.
pity, miserīcordia, miserīcordiae, f.; mis-
eret, miserēre, miseruit (37).
placate, plācō, plācēre, plācāvī, plācā-
tus.
place, locus, locē, m. in sing., m. and
n. in plu.; pars, partis, f.; pōnō,
pōnere, posui, positus.
plain, clārus, a, um; valles or vallis,
vallis, f.
plainly, apertē, adv.; plānē, adv.
plan, rēs, rēi, f.; cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, n.
Plataeans, Plataeënēs, Plataeēnsium,
m.
Plaucius, Plaucius, Plaucē, m.
play, lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus; play
the harp, cithārā personō, perso-
nāre, personui, personitus.
pleasant, iūcundus, a, um.
please, dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī,
dēlectātus, w. acc.; placō, placēre,
placui, placitus, w. dat.
plebeian, plēbeius, a, um; noun, plē-
bēius, plēbēi, m.
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, f.; plēbēs,
plēbēi, f.
plow, arātrum, arātri, n.; arō, arāre,
arāvī, arātus.
Pluto, Plūtōn, Plūtōnis, m.
poem, poēma, poēmatis, n.
poet, poēta, poētae, m.
point out, mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōn-
strāvī, mōnstrātus.
pole, contus, contī, m.; long pole,
longurium, longurii, m.
Pompey, Gnaeus Pompeius, gen.
Gnaē Pompeī, m.
Pomponius, Pomponius, Pomponī, m.
Pontifex, Pontifex, Pontificis, m.
Pontus, Pontus, Pontī, m.
poor, pauper, pauperis, adj.
port, portus, portūs, m.
pour, fundō, fundere, fūdī, ūfus;
pour a libation, libō, libāre, libāvī,
libātus.
power, potestās, potestātis, f.; power
(of dictator), imperium, imperii, n.
powerful, potēns, gen. potentis, adj.
practical experience, īsus, īsus, m.
(96).
praefectura, praefectūra, praefec-
tūrae, f.
praetor, praetor, praetōris, m.
praise, laus, laudis, f.; laudō, laudāre,
laudāvi, laudātus.
prayers, precēs, precum, f. (nom. and gen. sing. not used); of a prayer, in prece.

precedent, exemplum, exempli, n.

prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.

prepare, parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus; well prepared, parātissimus, a, um; all Greece was astir with preparation, tōtā Graecī comparā-bātur.

present, dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus; offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus; noun, dōnum, ī, n.; mīnus, mūneris, n.; be present, addum, adesse, adfuī, —; in presence of, apud, prep. w. acc.; cōram, prep. w. abl.; in presence of somebody, aliquō praesente (74).

preserve, cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus.

preside over court, iūdīcium exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus.

resume, crēdō, crēdere, crēdīdī, crēditus.

pretend, simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātus.

prevent, dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterrūi, dēterritus (275).

previously arranged plan, ante initium consiliūm (ante, adv.; initium, a, um; consiliūm, consiliī, n.).

Priam, Priamūs, Priamī, m.

price, pretium, pretīī, n.

priest, priestess, sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m. and f.

prison, carcer, carceris, m.

prisoner, captivus, captīvī, m.

private, privātus, a, um.

prize, mīnus, mūneris, n.

proconsul, prōcōnsul, prōcōnsulis, m.

prohibit, prohibēō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus.

promise, pollicēor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum; prōmitīō, prōmitīere, prōmisī, prōmissus.

prompted by, ob, prep. w. acc.; propter, prep. w. acc. (287).

prophet, vātēs, vātīs, m. and f.

propose a law, prōmulgō, prōmulgāre, prōmulgāvī, prōmulgātus.

Proserpina, Prōserpīna, Prōserpinae, f.

protect, cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus (49).

protection, praestidium, praesidiūm, n.

prove, dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus; prove an advantage, bonō sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (49).

proverbial, fāmā trāditus, a, um (fāma, fāmae, f.; trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītus).

provided, dum, conj.; dum modo, conj. (267).

province, prōvincia, prōvinciae, f.

provisions, cibāria, cibāriōrum, n.; ground provisions, cibāria molita (molā, molere, molūi, molitus); provision has been made, prōviso est (16).

public, públicus, a, um.

pull up, convellō, convellere, convelli, convulsus.

punishment, poena, poenae, f.; supplicium, supplicīi, n.; inflict punishment on, sūmere supplicium dē, w. abl. (sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpstus); capital punishment suggests punishing with death, morte multō, multāre, multāvi, multātus.
purple, purpura, purpurae, f.; purpureus, a., um.
purpose, causa, causae, f.; rés, rei, f.; the purpose of a journey = why the journey is made.
pursue, persequer, perseveri, perseveritus sum; be in close pursuit, subsequez, subsequi, subsequitus sum.
put, pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus; put on toga, induō, induere, indui, inditus; put on veil, nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus; put (into cases), déponō, déponere, déposui, dépositus; put to death, morte multō, multāre, multāvi, multātus; ad mortem adducō, adducere, adduxi, adductus; interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfexit.
Pyrenees, Pyrēnaei, Pyrēnaeorum, m.
Pythia, Pythia, Pythiae, f.
Pythius, Pythius, Pythi, m.
Pytho, Pytho, Pythūs, f.

Q
quaestor, quaestor, quaestōris, m.
qualities, rēs, rērum, f.
quarter, pars, partis, f.; quarters = tent, tabernaculum, tabernaculi, n.
queen, régina, réginae, f.
question, rogō, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātus; quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus; ask many questions, multa rogāre or quaerere.
quickly, celeriter, adv.
Quintus, Quīntus, Quīntī, m.
quorum, numerus lēgiti̇mus, gen. numerī lēgitimi, m.

R
race, genus, generis, n.; gēns, gentis, f.
raise, tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus; raise an army, exercitum cōgō, cōgeret, coāctus; raise = erect, pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus.
rampart, vāllum, vālli, n.
rancid, amārus, a., um.
rank, õrdō, ordinis, m.; rank = line of an army, aciēs, aciēi, f.
rapturdity, celeritās, celeritātis, f.
rapturdly, celeriter.
reach a place, perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus, w. in and acc.
read, legō, legere, lēgi, lēctus.
ready, parātus, a., um.
real, vērus, a., um.
reality, rēs, rei, f.
realize, sentiō, sentāre, sēnsi, sēnsus; intellegō, intellegere, intellēxi, intellēctus.
realm, rēgnum, rēgni, n.
rear, āgmen novissimum, gen. āgminis novissimi, n.
reason, causa, causae, f.; rēs, rei, f.; for this reason, quā de causā (69).
rebuild, restituō, restituerre, restituī, restituitus.
recall, revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātus.
receive, accipō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus; receive advice, moneor, monēri, monitus sum; receive punish-
ishment, supplicium sūmī dē w. abl. (sūmō, sūmere, sūmēsi, sūmp-
tus).
recent, recēns, gen. recentīs, adj.
reckon, dūcō, dūcert, dūxi, ductus; habēo, habēre, habuī, habitus; putō, putāre, putāvi, putātus.
recline, accubō, accubāre, —, —.
recommend, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.
recover, recipiō, recipere, recēpī, re-

ceptus; recuperō, recuperāre, recupērāvī, recuperātus.

reduce, minūō, minuere, minui, minūtus; reduce to the form of a province, in provinciam redigō, redigere, redīgī, redēctus.

reflect, cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus.

refuse, recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus (276).

regard, habēō, habère, habuī, habītus.

region, regīō, regiōnis, f.

regret, paenītīt, paenītēre, paenīitus (37).

regain, rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus.

remain, manēō, manère, mānsī, mānsus; continēō, continère, continui, contentus, w. acc. of reflex. pron.; remain unnoticed, lateō, lateīre, latuī, —; it remains to be said, restat or reliquam est ut dicātur.

remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remarkable, egregius, a, um; singularāris, singularāre.

remedy, medeor, medērī, —.

remember, memorīā teneō, tenère, tenui, tentus; memini, meminisse, —; reminīscor, reminīscī, —; remember me to the children, pueris salūtem dīcitō (177).

render a verdict, iūdico, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus.

renowned, clārus, a, um.

repeatedly, saeptissimē; semel atque iterum; etiam atque etiam.

repent, paenītēt, paenītēre, paenītuit (37).

reply to questions, respondō, respondēre, respondī, respondēns ad rogāta.

report, nūntius, nūntīi, m.; nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus.

represent, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.

republic, rēspūblīca, rēspūblīcae, f.

require, postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus; as occasion requires, ut rēs expostulat.

requite, grātīam referō, referre, retuli, relātus.

resign, abdicō, abdicāre, abdicāvī, abdicātus, w. acc. of pers. pron. and abl. of separation.

resist, resistō, resistere, restiū, —.

resolution, animī magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f.

respectable, bonus, a, um.

rest, quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus; cēteri, ae, a; reliquis, a, um; rest assured, scīō (175).

restore, restitū, restituere, restituit; redō, redere, redidī, redidit; restore peace, stabilīō, stabilire, stabilītus, stabilitās.

result of this is, hīs rēbus fit; quō fit.

return, redeō, redire, redīi, redītus; revertor, revertī, reversus sum; redidī, redidere, redidītus.

reward, mīnus, mūneris, n.; remūnerō, remūnerāre, remūnerāvī, remūnerātus.

rewrite, rescribō, rescribere, rescripsī, rescripsītus.

Rhadamanthus, Rhadamanthus, Rha- damanthī, m.

Rhone, Rhodanus, Rhodani, m.

rich, dīvēs, gen. dīvitis, adj., or dīs, gen. dītis, adj.

rid, prōiciō, prōicere, prēicē, prōiectus forās.

ride, in equō eō, īre, īi, itus.

ridicule, videō, ridere, risī, risus.
right, dexter, dextra or dextra, dextrum or dextera; divine right, fās, indecl. noun; human right, iūs, iūris, n.
rise, surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus.
risk, periculum, periculi, n.; at one's risk, suō periculō.
river, flūmen, flūminis, n.
road, iter, itineris, n.; via, viae, f.
robe, toga, togae, f.; vestis, vestīs, f.
roll, volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus.
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; Romans, Rōmānī, Rōmānorum, m.
Rome, Rōma, Rōmae, f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, Rōmulī, m.
roof, tectum, tectī, n.
rough-looking, squālidus, a, um.
rout, fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus.
rin, currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus;
run away, fugō, fugāre, fugāvī,
—; tergum vertō, vertere, vertī,
versus; run down, décurrō, décurrere, décurreo, or décurrī, décursus.
rush forward, prōcurrō, prōcurrere,
prōcurrī or prōcurrī, prōcursus.
rustle, crepīō, crepitāre, crepitāvī,
crepitātus.

S
sacred, sacer, sacra, sacrum; sānctus, a, um.
sacrifice, sacrum, sacrī, n.
safe, incolumis, incolume; tūtus, a, um; salvus, a, um.
safeguard, praesidium, praesidiī, n.; tūtāmen, tūtāminis, n.
safety, salūs, salūtis, f.
sagum, sagum, sagī, n.
Saguntum, Saguntum, Saguntī, n.
sail, nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus; nāvem cōnsendō, cōssekere, cōssequi, cōssequī, cōssequēmus.
salute, salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātus.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
Sanga, Quintīs Fabius Sanga, gen. Quintī Fabī Sangaе, m.
Sardinia, Sardinia, Sardiniāe, f.
Sardis, Sardēs, Sardiūm, f.
save, cónservō, cónservāre, cónservāvi, cónservātus.
say, dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus.
scarcely, vix, adv.
scatter, spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus; dispersō, dispersere, dispersī, dispersus.
scheme, cōnsilium, cōsiliī, n.; dōlus, dōli, m.
soundrel, vir nēquissimus, gen. viri nequissīmi, m.; scele rents, scelentī, m.; facinorōsus, facinorōsī, m.
sea, mare, marii, n.; pelagus, pelagi, n.
seashore, óra, órae, f.
season, tempus anni (tempus, temporiis, n.; annus, annī, m.).
secure, tūtus, a, um.
see, videō, vidēre, vidī, visus.
seek for, quāerō, quāerere, quaēsīvi, quaēsitus.
seem, videor, viscer, visum.
seize, comprehendō, comprehender, comprehendit, comprehēnsumus.
seldom, minimē saepe.
self, ipse, a, um (127); for self-preservation, sui conservāndi causā (40).
sell, vēndō, vēndere, vēndīdī, vēnditus.
senate, senātus, senātīs, m.
senator, senātor, senātōris, m.
send, mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus.
sensible, prūdēns, gen. prūdēntis, adj.
sensibly, prūdenter, adv.; act sensibly, prūdenter agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.
serious, tantus, a, um; gravis, grave.
serpent, serp'ns, serpentis, m. and f.; anguis, anguis, m. and f.
set out = start, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; set out = plant, serō, serere, sēvī, satus.
seven, septem, indecl. card. adj.
seven hundred, septingenti, ae, a.
seventeen, septendecim, indecl. card. adj.
seventh, septimus, a, um.
seventy, septuāgintā, indecl. card. adj.
severe, sevērōs, a, um; gravis, grave.
sewer, cloāca, cloācae, f.
shape, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus;
shape a course to circumstances, tempōri cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus.
sharply, ēcritrēr.
she, haec; ea; illa.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, f.; war ship, nāvis longa, gen. nāvis longae, f.
shore, litus, littoris, n.
shoulder, umerus, umerī, m.
shout, clāmō, clamāre, clamāvī, clā-
mātus; noun, clamor, clamōris, m.
show, mōnstrō, monstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus; ostendō, ostendere, os-
tendī, ostentus; show (courage), praeستō, praeestāre, praeestītī, prae-
stitus, w. acc.
shrewd, callidus, a, um; sagāx, gen.
sagīcis, adj.
shudder, horreō, horrēre, horrorī, —.
shut, claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus.
Sibyl, Sibylla, Sibyllae, f.
Sibylline, Sibyllīnus, a, um.

Sicily, Sicilia, Siciliae, f.
side, latus, lateris, n.; be on the side of, sum, esse, fūi, futūrūs, w. gen.
siege, oppugnātīō, oppugnātiōnis, f.
sign, signum, signī, n.; insigne, insignis, n.
signal, signum, signī, n.
silence, silentium, silentīī, n.; be silent, taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus;
sileō, silère, silūī, —; quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus.
since, cum; quoniam; quod (252 –

Sinope, Sinōpē, Sinōpis, f.
sit, sedēō, sedere, sēdī, sessus.
situated, positus, a, um.
six, sex, indecl. card. adj.; six hundred, sescentī, ae, a; sixteen, sēdecim, indecl. card. adj.; sixty, sexāgintā, indecl. card. adj.; six-
tieth, sexāgīsimus, a, um.
size, magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f.
slaughter, trucidō, trucidāre, truci-
dūvī, trucidātus.
slave, servus, servi, m.
sleep, dormīō, dormire, dormīvī, dor-
mītus.
slippery, lūbricus, a, um.
slow, tardus, a, um.
slowly, tardē, adv.
small, parvus, a, um.
smear, spargō, spargere, sparsi, spars-
sus.
smoking, incendēns, incendentis, pres. part.
snow, nix, nīvis, f.; snow-white, nīveus, a, um.
so, sīc; ita; tam; as... so, ut... ita;
so great, so much, tantus, a, um;  
so greatly, tantopere; so many,  
tot; tam multi, ae, a; so to speak,  
quidam, quaedam, quiddam or  
quoddam (154).  
soldier, miles, militis, m.  
Solon, Solon, Solonius, m.  
some, aliquis or aliqui, aliqua,  
aliquid or aliquod, indef. pron.;  
there are some who, sunt qui  
w. subjunc.; some day, aliquandō,  
adv.  
son, filius, fill, m.; nātus, nati, m.;  
son-in-law, gener, generi, m.  
soon, mox, adv.; as soon as, cum  
primum (240–243); as soon as  
possible, quam primum (94).  
sorrow, dolor, dolōris, m.; general  
sorrow, omnium dolor.  
sorrowful, dolēns, gen. dolentis, pres.  
part.; flēns, gen. flentis, pres. part.  
sorry, magnō dolōre affectus (afficiō,  
afficere, affēci, affectus).  
sound, sonus, soni, m.; sonitus, īs,  
m.; sound the trumpet = give  
the signal with the trumpet.  
space, spatium, spatii, n.  
Spain, Hispānia, Hispāniae, f.  
spare, parcō, parcere, peperci or parsi,  
parcitus or parsus; spare one’s  
feelings, animum non offendō, off-  
fendere, offendere, offendō, offensus.  
Sparta, Sparta, Spartae, f.  
Spartans, Lacedaemonii, Lacedae-  
omoniorum, m.  
speak with, conloquor, conloqui, con-  
locutus sum.  
special, certus, a, um; singuli, ae, a.  
speech, orātio, orātiōnis, f.; sermō,  
sermōnis, m.  
spend (time), agō, agere, ēgī, ēactus.  
spirit, anima, animae, f.  
spring, vēr, vēris, n.; in the spring,  
vēre (78).  
stake, agō, agere, ēgī, ēactus.  
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, status; stand  
= endure, perferō, perferre, pertuli,  
perlātus; stand = allow, suffer,  
patior, pati, passus sum; stand  
ready, paror, parārī, parātus sum.  
standard, signum, sīgni, n.  
standard bearer, signifer, signiferi,  
m.  
state, cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.; rēs publica,  
reī publicae, f.; state of affairs, rēs,  
reī, f.; state a case, expōnē, ex-  
pōnere, exposuī, expositus; diō,  
dicere, dīxi, dictus.  
statesman, qui in rēs publica diri-  
genēdā versātur.  
Statilius, Statilius, Statili, m.  
station, cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōsti-  
tuī, cōnstituitus.  
statue, statua, statuae, f.; imāgō,  
imāginis, f.; under Apollo’s statue,  
sub basī Apollinis (basis, basis, f.).  
steep, arduus, a, um; praeceps, praecipi-  
titis, adj.  
step, pēs, pedis, m.; step on, ingredior,  
ingrediē, ingressus sum, w. acc.  
stir up, instīgō, instīgāre, instīgāvi,  
instīgātus.  
stola, stola, stolae, f.  
stone, lapis, lapidis, m.; saxum, saxi,  
n.; rūpēs, rūpis, f.  
stop, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitū, dēstitus;  
stop = delay, moror, morārī, morā-  
tus sum.  
storm, tempestās, tempestātis, f.  
strange, mīrus, a, um; mīrābilis,  
mīrābile, adj.  
stranger, hospes, hospitis, m. and f.
strength, rōbur, rōboris, n.; vīrēs, vīrium, f.
strike, icō, icere, icī, ictus; laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus.
strong, potēns, gen. potentis, adj.; rōbustus, a, um; firmus, a, um.
subdue, pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus.
succeed = follow, succēdō, succedere, successī, successus, w. dat.
such, is, ea, id; tālis, tāle; such . . . as, is, ea, . . . qui, quaer, quod; tālis, tale, . . . quālis, quāle; tantus, a, um, . . . quantus, a, um.
suffer from, perferō, perferre, pertulī, perītus, w. acc.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
suitor, marītus, marītī, m.
Sulla, Sulla, Sullae, m.
sum of money, pecūnia, pecūniae, f.; sum up, conclusō conclusūre, conclusī, conclusus (189).
summer, aestās, aestātis, f.
summit, summus, a, um (95).
summon, vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.; at sunset, sōlis occasū.
superior, superior, superius, adj.
superstitious fear, religiō et metus (97) (religīō, religiōnīs, f.; metus, metūs, m.).
supplies, commeātis, commeātūs, m.
suppose, putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus.
supreme power, summum imperium, gen. summī imperīi, n.
surname, cognōmen, cognōminus, n.
surpass, praestō, praestāre, praestītī, praestitus, w. dat.; praecēdō, praeceedere, praecessī, praecessus, w. acc.
surprised, mirātus, a, um (miror, mirārī, mirātus sum).
surrender, dēdō, dēdere, dēdītī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventus.
suspect, suspiciō, suspicere, suspēxi, spectus; suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum.
suspicion, suspiciō, suspiciōnis, f.
suspicious, suspiciōsus, a, um; suspicāx, gen. suspicācis, adj.
swift, celer, celeris, celer.
swiftness, celeritās, celeritātis, f.
symbol, insigne, insignis, n.
Syria, Syria, Syriae, f.

T

tables, tabulae, tabulārum, f.
take, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus; take away, tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublatūs; take an oath, iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātus (54); take side of, sum, esse, fūi, futūrus, w. gen. (33); take vengeance on, supplicium sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpsus, w. dē and abl.; take a long time, longum esse; take a seat, assidēō, assideère, assēdi, assessus; take a city, expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus; take charge of army, imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus; take pains to adjust the toga, togam complōnī, compōnere, composuī, composītus.
tame, domō, domāre, domūi, domītus.
Tarquinius Superbus, Tarquinius Superbus, gen. Tarquini Superbī, m.
Tarquins, Tarquiniī, Tarquiniōrum, m.
Tartarus, Tartarus, Tartari, m.; plur. Tartara, Tartarōrum, n.
taxes, stipendium, stipendiī, n.; vec-figal, vecfigālis, n.
teach, doceō, docère, docuī, doctus.
tear, lacrima, lacrimae, f.
tell, nárrō, nárrāre, nárrāvī, nárrātus; nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus; patefaciō, patefacere, patefectī, patefectus.
tempest, tempestās, tempestātis, f.
temple, templum, templī, n.; fānum, fānī, n.; aedes, aedis, f.
ten, decem, indecl. card. adj.
tend, pertineō, pertinère, pertinui, pertinentus; tendency of = to what it pertains, quo pertinere.
tent, tabernāculum, tabernāculī, n.
Terentia, Terentia, Terentiae, f.
territory, finēs, finium, m.; agrī, agrōrum, m.
Thales, Thales, Thalīs or Thalētis, m.
than, quam conj. (67).
thank, grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.
thanksgiving, supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis, f.
that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; ut (206–210); quīn (276); that of yours, iste, ista, istud.
Thebes, Thēbae, Thēbōrum, f.
their (their own), suus, a, um, referring to the subject, but agreeing with the object possessed; eōrum, eārum, eōrum; hōrum, hārum, hōrum; illōrum, illārum, illōrum, may be used to express their not referring to the subject.
themselves, īpsī, ae, a, intens. pron.; sē, reflex. pron.
then, tum, adv.; deinde, adv. (304).
thoretical knowledge, ratiō et doctrīna (18) (ratiō, ratiōnis, f.; doctrīna, doctrīnae, f.).
there, ibi, adv.; the English expletive there is not to be rendered in Latin.
therefore, itaque (349–351).
Thermopylae, Thermopylae, Thermopylārum, f.
Thespians, Thespīnēsēs, Thespīnēsium, m.
Thessalonica, Thessalonica, Thessaloniāce, f.
Thessaly, Thessalia, Thessaliāe, f.
thing, rēs, reī, f.
think, putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus (278).
third, tertius, a, um.
thirteen, tredecim, indecl. card. adj.
thirty, trīginta, indecl. card. adj.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id; this being the case, quae cum ita sint.
thousand, mīlle (87).
Thrace, Thrācia, Thrāciae, f.
threaten, minor, mināri, minātus sum.
three, trēs, tria; three thousand, tria mīlia, w. gen.; three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.
throne, solium, solīi, n.; régnum, rēgni, n.
through, per, prep. w. acc.
throw, iacio, iacere, iēci, iactus; throw back, reiciō, reicere, reiēci, reiectus; throw into, iniciō, iniciere, iniēci, iniēctus.
thus, sic, adv.; ita, adv.
Thymoetes, Thymoetēs, Thymoetae, m.
Tiber, Tiberis, Tiberis, m.
tide, aestus, aëstūs, m.
Tigranes, Tigrānēs, Tigrānis, m.
Tigranocerta, Tigranocerta, Tigranocertae, f.
timber, materia, materiae, f.
time, tempus, temporis, n.; at times, nonnumquam.
timidity, timor, timōris, m.; metus, metūs, m.
tire, fatigō, fatigōre, fatigōvī, fatigōtus; taedet, taedēre, taeduit or tae-
sum est.
Titan, Titān, Titānis, m.
“tit for tat” = returning like for like, pār pāri referre (referō, refer-
erre, retuli, relātus).
to, ad, prep. w. acc.
toga, toga, togae, f.
tomb, sepulcrum, sepulcrī, n.
tongue, lingua, linguae, f.
top of, summus, a, um (95).
torture, cruciātus, cruciātus, m.; tort-
ure some one to death, aliquem, omni supplicīo excruciātum necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus.
touch upon, attingō, attingere, attigi, attāctus.
toward, ad, prep. w. acc.; in, prep.
w. acc.
tower, turris, turris, f.
town, oppidum, oppidi, n.
tradition asserts, fāma trāditum est
(fāma, ae, f.; trādō, trādere, trā-
didī, trāditus).
Trajan, Trāiānus, Trāiānī, m.
Transalpine, Trānsalpīnus, a, um.
transfer, trādō, trādere, trādidi, trā-
ditus.
transport, trādūcō, trāduācere, trādiāxī,
trāducūs; trānsportō, trānsportāre, trān-
sportāvī, trānsportātus.
travel, eō, ire, īi, itus; iter faciō,
facere, fecī, factus.
treacherous, callidus, a, um.
treason, prōditiō, prōditiōnis, f.
treasures, gāza, gāzae, f.
treat with respect, summō honōre
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus.
treaty, foedus, foederis, n.
tree, arbor or arbōs, arboris, f.
Triarius, Triārius, Triārī, m.
tribe, tribus, tribūs, f.
tribune, tribūnus, tribūni, m.; mili-
tary tribune, tribūnus mīlitum;
tribune of the commons, tribūnus plēbis.
trick, dolus, doli, m.
trip, iter, itineris, n.
tripod, tripus, tripodis, m.
triumph, triumphus, triumphi, m.;
triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī,
triumphātus.
triumvirs, triumvirī, triumvirōrum,
m.
Trojan, Troiānus, a, um; Trojans,
Troīānī, Troīānorum, m.
troops, cōpiāe, cōpiārum, f.
troubled, maestus, a, um; in dolōre
sum, esse, futurūs.
Troy, Trōia, Trōiae, f.
true, vērus, a, um; it is true, qui-
dem; vērum (338).
trumpet, tuba, tubae, f.
trust, crēdō, crēdore, crēdidī, crēditus.
try, cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum.
Tucca, Tucca, Tuccae, m.
Tullianum, Tulliānum, Tulliānī, n.
Tullius, Tullius, Tullī, m.
turma, turma, turmæ, f.
turn, vertō, vertere, vertī, versus;
turn away, āvertō, āvertere, āverti,
āversus; turn around, circumver-
tō, circumvertere, circumvertī, circum-
versus.
Tusculum, Tusculum, Tusculū, n.
twelfth, duodecinus, a, um.
twelve, duodecin, indecl. card. adj.
twenty, viginti, indecl. card. adj.
twice, bis, adv.
twins, gemini, geminorum, m. and f.
two, duo, ae, o; two days, biduum, bidui, n.
two hundred, ducenti, ae, a.

tyrannically, regiē, adv.
tyrant, tyrannus, tyrannī, m.
'twixt, inter, prep. w. ace.

U
unavailing = in vain, frustrā, adv.; nēquiquam, adv.
uncertain, incertus, a, um.
uncle, avunculus, avunculi, m.
der, sub, prep. w. acc. and abl. (322).
underground, subterraneus, a, um.
understand, intellegō, intellegere, intellēxi, intellectus.
undertake, suscipio, suscipere, succēpī, suscēptus.
undoubtedly, profecto; sānē.
uneven, impar, gen. impāris, adj.
unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.
ungrateful, ingrātus, a, um.
unite, coniungō, coniungere, coniunxt, coniunctus.
unjust, iniquus, a, um.
unknown, ignōtus, a, um.
unless, nisi, conj. (215).
unlike, dissimilis, dissimile.
unoccupied, vacuus, a, um; be unoc-
cupied, vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacā-
tus.
unsuspicious, nōn suspiciāx, gen. suspicācis; nihil suspicāns, gen. suspicantis.

until, dum, conj. (250; 251); until morning, ad primam lūcem.
unto, ad, prep. w. acc.
unusual, insolitus, a, um.
unwilling, invitus, a, um; be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.—
upper, superior, superius.
uprightness, integritās, integritātīs, f.
urge, hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum; impellō, impellere, impuli, impulsus.
use, utōr, utī, úsus sum, w. abl.; noun, úsus, úsūs, m.
useful, utilis, utile.
utenils, ātēnsilia, ātēnsium, n.
utter, ēloquor, ēloqui, ēlocūtus sum.

V
vain (in), frustrā, adv.; nēquiquam, adv.
valiant, fortis, forte.
valley, vallis or vallīs, vallis, f.
valor, virtūs, virtūtis, f.
valuable, pretiosus, a, um.
value, exēstīmus, exēstīmāre, exēstīmus, existimātus.
various, varius, a, um.
Varius, Varius, Vari, m.
vast, vāstus, a, um; maximus, a, um; ingēns, ingentis.
Vatican, Vaticānus, Vaticāni, m.
vengeance, supplicium, suppliciī, n.
Venus, Venus, Veneris, f.
Vergilius, Publius Vergilius Marō, gen. Publi Vergili Maronis, m.
verse, carmen, carminis, n.; versed in the art of war, peritus reī militāris; versed in politics, in re publicā dirigenda versātus.
very, ipse, a, um, intens. pron.; valde, adv. Express by the superlative.
vessel, nāvis, nāvis, f.
Vesta, *Vesta, Vestae, f.*

veterans, *veterānī, veterānorum, m.* 
veto, *intercessiō, intercessiōnis, f.* 
vētō, *vetārē, vetūī, vetītus.*

viator, *viātor, viātōris, m.*

victor, *victōr, victōris, m.*

victory, *victoriā, victoriāe, f.*

view, *dēspectus, dēspectūs, m.*

villa, *villa, villae, f.*

village, *vīcūs, vīcī, m.*

violate, *viōlō, viōlārē, viōlātus; violate every divine obligation, omne fās a brumpō, abrumpere, abrūpī, abruptus.*

violence, *vīs, viōs, f.*

violent grief, *vīs ac dolor (dolor, dolōris, m.); violent tempest, magnā tempestātis, gen. magnae tempesta-tis, f.*

virus, vīrgō, vīrginis, f.*

voice, *vōx, vōcis, f.*

vote, *cēnso, cēnsēre, cēnsūī, cēnsus.*

vow, *vōtum, vōtī, n.; vovērī, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus.*

Vulcan, *Vulcānus, Vulcānī, m.*

W

wage war, *bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus.*

wagon, *carrus, carrī, m.*

wait for, *exspectō, exspectāre, exspectātī, exspectātus.*

wall, *mūrus, mūrī, m.; wall of a house, pāriēs, pārietis, m.; walls of a town, moenia, moenium, n.*

wander, *vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum.*

wanting (be), *absum, abesse, āfūi, absūlūrus.*

war, *bellum, bellī, n.; bellō, bellārē, bellāvī, bellātus; begin war, in bel-

lum ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum.*

watch, *cūstōs, cūstodīs, m.*

water, *aqua, aquae, f.; inrigō, inrigāre, inrigāvī, inrigātus.*

way, *via, viae, f.*

wealthy, *opulentus, a, um.*

weapon, *tēlum, tēlī, n.*

wear, *gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus.*

weight, *auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.; have weight or influence, multum possum, posse, potūi,—; multum valeō, valerē, valūi.*

well, *bene, adv.; validus, a, um; well? quid vērō? (163); be well, valeō, valēre, valūi.*

what, *quī, quae, quod, rel. pron.; quis, quid, inter. pron.; whatever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.*

when, *ubi, adv.; cum, conj. (237-241).*

where, *ubi, adv. with verb of rest; quō, adv. with verb of motion.*

whether, *sī; num; -ne; utrum (170; 171; 336).*

which, *quī, quae, quod, rel. pron.; quis, quid, inter. pron.; which of two, uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrīus, dat. utrī.*

while, *dum (248); a little while after, paulō post (60).*

white, *albus, a, um, opp. of āter, ātra ātrum; candidus, a, um, opp. of niger, nigra, nigrum.*

whither, *quem ad locum?* 

who, *quī, quae, rel. pron.; quis, inter. pron.*

whoever, *quīcumque, quaecumque.*

whole, *tōtus, a, um, gen. tōtīus, dat. tōī.*

why, *cūr, adv.; quid? (159).*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wicked, improbus, a, um.</td>
<td>workmanship, opus, operis, n.; manus, manis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide, latus, a, um.</td>
<td>world, orbis terrae ox terrarum (orbis, orbis, m.; terra, terrae, f.); in the world’s history, post hominum memoriam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife, coniunx, coningis, f.; uxor, uxoris, f.</td>
<td>worship, adoratiō, adoratiōnis, f.; veneror, venerārī, venerātus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will and testament, testamentum, testāmenti, n.; against one’s will, invitus, a, um.</td>
<td>worth, pretium, pretī, n.; be worth much, magnū sum, esse, fiū, futūrus (34).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willing, volēns, volentis; be willing, volō, velle, volū, —</td>
<td>worthy, dignus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (84).</td>
<td>would that, utinam, interj. (273).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind, ventus, venti, m.</td>
<td>wretched, miser, misera, miserum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winter, hiemis, hiemī, f.; hiemō, hiemāvī, hiemātus.</td>
<td>write, scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wisdom, sapientia, sapientiae, f.; cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, n.</td>
<td>writer, scriptor, scriptōris, m. and f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wise, sapiens, gen. sapientis (33).</td>
<td>wrong-doing, maleficium, maleficii, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish, volō, velle, volū, —; cupidō, cupidere, cupidātus.</td>
<td>Xerxes, Xerxēs, Xerxis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with, cum, prep. w. abl. (316; 310).</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdraw, excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessus; cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, conlātus, w. acc. of pers. or reflex. pron.</td>
<td>year, annus, anni, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>within, intrā, prep. w. acc.</td>
<td>yearly, quotannis, adv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without, sine, prep. w. abl. (200; 317).</td>
<td>yes indeed, inmō verō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withstand, sustineō, sustinere, sustinuī, sustentus.</td>
<td>yet, tamen, conj. (342); and yet, quamquam, conj.; not yet, nōn-dum, adv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>witness, testis, testis, m. and f. (18).</td>
<td>young, iuvenis, gen. iuvenis, adj.; adolēscēns, gen. adolēscēntis, adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman, fēmina, fēmineae, f.; mulier, mulieris, f.; old woman, anus, anus, f.</td>
<td>your, tuus, a, um, poss. pron. showing one owner, and agreeing in gender, number, and case with the object possessed; vester, vestra, vestrum, showing more than one owner, and agreeing with the object possessed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonder, miror, mirārī, mirātus sum.</td>
<td>yourself, tū īse or ipsa, gen. tū īpisus (tū, pers. pron.; īse, ipsa, intens. pron.).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>